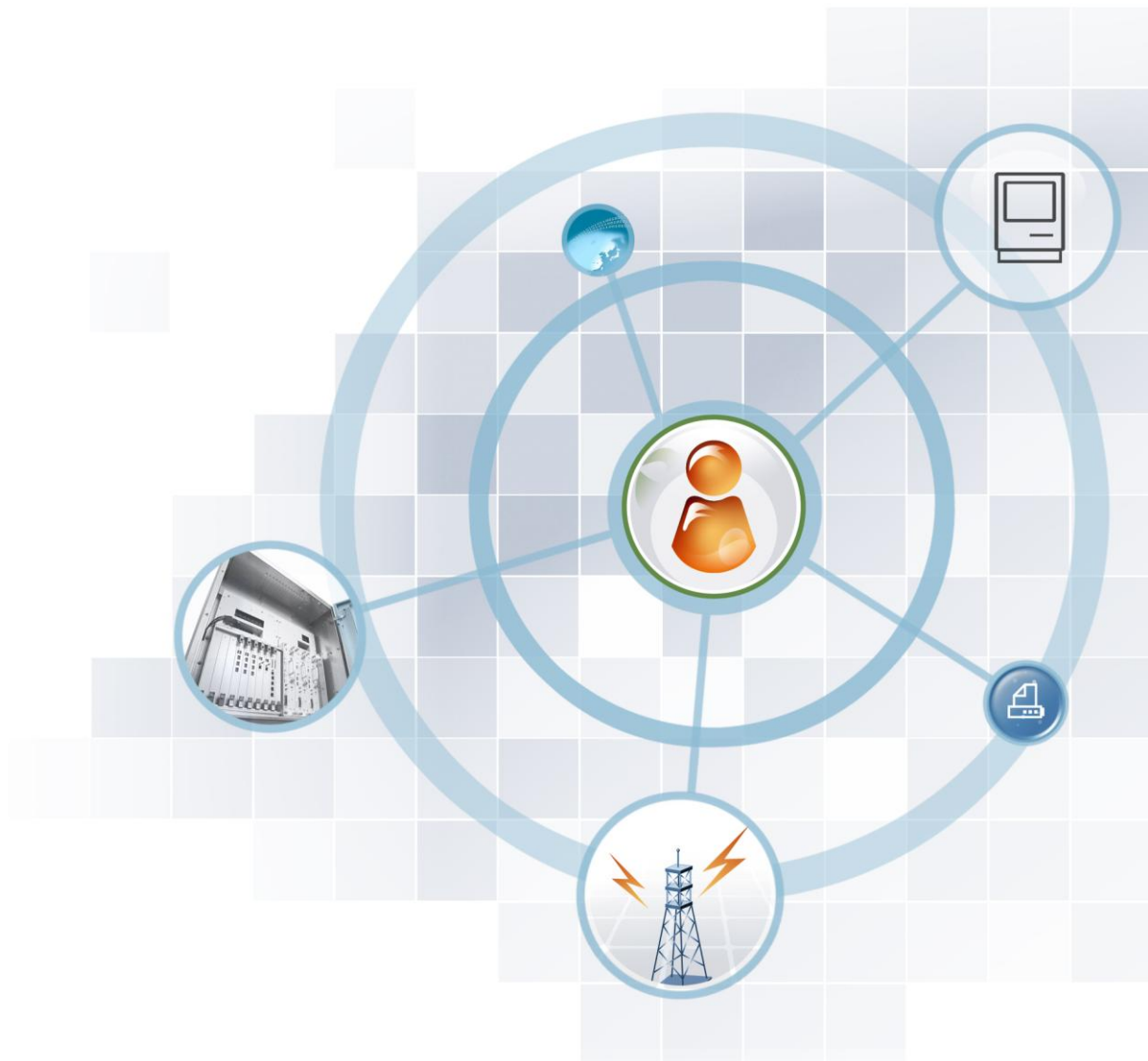


WEC8500/WEC8050 (APC)

Operation Manual



COPYRIGHT

This manual is proprietary to SAMSUNG Electronics Co., Ltd. and is protected by copyright. No information contained herein may be copied, translated, transcribed or duplicated for any commercial purposes or disclosed to the third party in any form without the prior written consent of SAMSUNG Electronics Co., Ltd.

TRADEMARKS

Product names mentioned in this manual may be trademarks and/or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

This manual should be read and used as a guideline for properly installing and operating the product.

All reasonable care has been made to ensure that this document is accurate. If you have any comments on this manual, please contact our documentation centre at the following homepage:

Homepage: <http://www.samsungdocs.com>

INTRODUCTION

Purpose

This manual describes the overview, management, and setup of WEC8500/WEC8050 that is a Samsung Wireless Enterprise (W-EP) Access Point Controller (APC). This manual is written for WEC8500 version 1.4.4, WEC8050 version 1.0.0.

Document Content and Organization

This manual consists of ten Chapters, three Annexes, and a list of Abbreviations.

CHAPTER 1. Access Point Controller System Overview

This chapter describes the main functions, network configuration, external configuration and service scenario of APC.

CHAPTER 2. Basic System Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure to use Command Line Interface (CLI) and Web UI.

CHAPTER 3. Data Network Function

This chapter describes how to set up the data network such as interface, Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN), L3, or Quality of Service (QoS), etc. of APC.

CHAPTER 4. AP Connection Management

This chapter describes the connection management function of APC and Samsung W-EP wireless LAN Access Point (AP).

CHAPTER 5. WLAN Management

This chapter describes how to set up the Wireless Local Area Network (WLAN) of APC.

CHAPTER 6. Wi-Fi Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure the Wireless Fidelity (Wi-Fi) of APC, QoS, and country code.

CHAPTER 7. WLAN Additional Service

This chapter describes how to set up WLAN additional services available in the APC.

CHAPTER 8. Security

This chapter describes how to set up security related setting such as Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) server available in the APC, unauthorized AP detection and blocking function, guest access, WEB pass-through, Network Address Translation (NAT), firewall function, etc.

CHAPTER 9. IP Application

This chapter describes the Internet Protocol (IP) application functions available in the APC such as Domain Naming Service (DNS), Network Time Protocol (NTP), File Transfer Protocol (FTP)/sFTP, or Telnet/SSH.

CHAPTER 10. System Management

This chapter describes the various system management functions available in the APC.

ANNEX A. CLI Command Structure

Command structure available in the CLI of APC.

ANNEX B. Open Source Announcement (WEC8500/WEC8050)

Open source list used in the APC and its license notice.

ANNEX C. Open Source Announcement (WEA302/WEA303/WEA312/ WEA313/WEA403/WEA412)

Open source list used in the Samsung W-EP wireless LAN AP and its license notice.

ABBREVIATION

Describes the acronyms used in this manual.

Conventions

The following types of paragraphs contain special information that must be carefully read and thoroughly understood. Such information may or may not be enclosed in a rectangular box, separating it from the main text, but is always preceded by an icon and/or a bold title.



NOTE

NOTE

Indicates additional information as a reference.

Console Screen Output

- The lined box with 'Courier New' font will be used to distinguish between the main content and console output screen text.
- '**Bold Courier New**' font will indicate the value entered by the operator on the console screen.

Revision History

VERSION	DATE OF ISSUE	REMARKS
5.0	05. 2014.	- Updated the content overall in accordance with the package version 2.0.0
4.0	01. 2014.	- Changed contents <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1.3.1 WEC8500 Configuration and Functions • 4.2.6.3 Tech Support Information
3.0	10. 2013.	- Updated the content overall in accordance with the package version (WEC8500 version 1.4.4, WEC8050 version 1.0.0) - Added contents for WEC8050
2.0	06. 2013.	- Updated the content overall in accordance with the package version 1.3.0 - Added contents <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3.4.6 OS-AWARE • 7.4.2 DPC Configuration • 7.4.3 DCS Configuration • 7.4.4 CHDC Configuration - Changed contents <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 7.10 Clustering • 10.8.2 System Upgrade
1.0	03. 2013.	First Version

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	3
Purpose.....	3
Document Content and Organization.....	3
Conventions.....	4
Console Screen Output.....	5
Revision History.....	5
CHAPTER 1. Access Point Controller System Overview	19
1.1 APC Overview	19
1.2 Network Configuration	21
1.3 APC Configuration and Functions	23
1.3.1 WEC8500 Configuration and Functions.....	23
1.3.2 WEC8050 Configuration and Functions.....	27
1.4 APC Application Configuration and Service Scenario	29
1.4.1 Basic Configuration.....	29
1.4.2 Configuration of Multiple APC for Redundancy.....	30
1.4.3 Clustering Configuration using Multiple APC (WEC8500).....	31
1.4.4 Configuration of Multiple Sites Consisting of Headquarter and Branches.....	34
1.5 NAT Configuration between AP and APC	36
CHAPTER 2. Basic System Configuration	37
2.1 Basic System Configuration	37
2.1.1 CLI Connection	37
2.1.2 Managing Operator Account	38
2.1.3 APC Management Port Configuration.....	39
2.1.4 SNMP Community Configuration.....	39
2.1.5 CLI Basic Usage	39
2.2 Using Web UI	42
2.2.1 Web UI Connection.....	42
2.2.2 WEC Main Window.....	43
2.2.3 Managing Operator Account	44

CHAPTER 3. Data Network Function	45
3.1 Port Configuration	45
3.1.1 Port management	45
3.2 Interface Configuration	49
3.2.1 Interface management	49
3.2.2 Managing Interface Group	52
3.3 VLAN Configuration	54
3.3.1 VLAN	54
3.3.2 Bridge	56
3.3.3 Spanning Tree.....	59
3.4 Layer 3 Protocol Configuration	63
3.4.1 IP Address Configuration.....	63
3.4.2 Static Routing Configuration.....	63
3.4.3 IP Multicast Routing Configuration	64
3.4.4 PIM Configuration.....	65
3.4.5 OSPF Configuration	65
3.4.6 VRRP Configuration	103
3.4.7 Configuring IPWATCHD.....	106
3.5 QoS	107
3.5.1 ACL Configuration	107
3.5.2 Class-map Configuration.....	111
3.5.3 Policy-map Configuration	112
3.5.4 Service Policy Configuration	113
3.5.5 Time Profile	114
3.5.6 OS-AWARE	117
3.6 Multicast to Unicast	120
3.7 IP Multicast Configuration	120
3.7.1 IP Multicast Routing Configuration	120
3.7.2 PIM Configuration.....	121
3.8 IGMP Snooping	123
CHAPTER 4. AP Connection Management	126
4.1 APC Management	126
4.1.1 Managing APC List.....	126
4.1.2 Management Interface Configuration.....	128
4.1.3 CAPWAP Configuration	129
4.1.4 AP Registration (Auto Discovery) Configuration	131

4.1.5	Managing AP File Transmission.....	132
4.1.6	APC Redundancy Configuration.....	132
4.2	AP Management.....	138
4.2.1	AP Group Configuration	138
4.2.2	Configuring Remote AP Group	153
4.2.3	AP Time Synchronization per Group	159
4.2.4	AP Configuration.....	161
4.2.5	Information Management	171
4.2.6	Outdoor AP Configuration	174
4.2.7	AP Package Upgrade.....	175
4.2.8	Remote AP Package Upgrade.....	180
CHAPTER 5.	WLAN Management	189
5.1	WLAN Configuration	189
5.1.1	Basic WLAN Configuration.....	189
5.1.2	WLAN Additional Configuration.....	192
5.1.3	WLAN-based ACL Configuration	194
5.1.4	Managing Root Service.....	196
5.2	Local Switching	199
5.3	Security and Authentication	202
5.3.1	Initialization of WLAN Security Function.....	202
5.3.2	WPAWPA2 PSK Configuration	204
5.3.3	WPAWPA2 802.1x Configuration.....	207
5.3.4	Static WEP Configuration	211
5.3.5	Dynamic WEP Configuration	213
5.4	DHCP Configuration.....	216
5.4.1	DHCP Server	216
5.4.2	DHCP Relay.....	224
5.4.3	DHCP Proxy.....	225
5.4.4	Option 82 Configuration.....	226
5.4.5	Primary/Secondary Server Configuration.....	228
5.5	Radio Service Configuration	231
CHAPTER 6.	Wi-Fi Configuration	233
6.1	802.11a/b/g/n/ac Radio Property	233
6.1.1	802.11a/b/g Configuration	233
6.1.2	802.11n Configuration.....	238
6.1.3	802.11ac Configuration.....	239

6.2	Wi-Fi QoS Configuration	241
6.2.1	QoS Configuration of Wireless Terminal	241
6.2.2	QoS Configuration of AP	243
6.2.3	Configuring QoS Profile of a Specific Terminal	247
6.2.4	Voice Optimization Configuration.....	249
6.3	802.11h Configuration	250
6.4	Country Code	252
 CHAPTER 7. WLAN Additional Services		 256
7.1	Managing Wireless Terminal	256
7.1.1	Information Retrieval Functions	256
7.1.2	Connection History related Configuration	257
7.2	Handover Management	258
7.2.1	Connection History Information	258
7.2.2	AirMove Configuration.....	258
7.2.3	Inter APC Handover Configuration	260
7.3	Call Admission Control (CAC) Configuration	261
7.3.1	SIP ALG Configuration	261
7.3.2	Voice CAC Configuration	263
7.3.3	Video CAC Configuration	265
7.4	Radio Resource Management (RRM)	267
7.4.1	RRM Configuration	267
7.4.2	DPC Configuration.....	268
7.4.3	DCS Configuration.....	270
7.4.4	CHDC Configuration.....	272
7.4.5	Sleeping Cell Detection	276
7.4.6	Energy Saving	278
7.5	Location Tracking	280
7.6	Spectrum Analysis	281
7.6.1	Retrieving Spectrum Analysis Data	281
7.6.2	Spectrum Analysis Configuration.....	284
7.6.3	Interference Type Configuration	286
7.7	Controlling Usage per User	287
7.8	Remote Packet Capture	289
7.9	Clustering	291
7.10	Limiting the Number of Connected Users	295
7.10.1	Limiting Connections per Radio.....	295

7.10.2	Connection Limitation per WLAN.....	296
7.11	Voice Statistics and Communication Failure Detection	298
7.11.1	Voice Statistics Function.....	298
7.11.2	Detecting WLAN-based Communication Failure	300
7.12	Voice Signal and Media Monitoring	301
7.12.1	Checking Voice Related Wireless Information	301
7.12.2	Checking Voice Related Quality Information.....	306
7.13	Multicast Stream Admission Control.....	309
7.13.1	Configuring Admission Control.....	309
CHAPTER 8.	Security	312
8.1	RADIUS Server Configuration	312
8.1.1	External RADIUS Server.....	312
8.1.2	Internal RADIUS Server	317
8.2	Unauthorized AP/Terminal Detection and Blocking	321
8.2.1	Enabling Detection Function	321
8.2.2	Detection	322
8.3	Captive Portal	340
8.3.1	WLAN Security Configuration	340
8.3.2	Guest Connection Configuration.....	341
8.4	WEB Pass-through.....	346
8.4.1	WLAN Security Configuration	346
8.5	NAT and Firewall Configuration	348
8.5.1	Firewall Configuration.....	348
8.5.2	Access List Configuration.....	350
8.5.3	NAT Configuration.....	351
8.6	MAC Filter	354
8.7	Operator Authentication through Interoperation with TACACS+ Server.....	357
8.7.1	Configuring External TACACS+ Server.....	357
8.7.2	Configuring Authentication Type of Operator Account.....	360
CHAPTER 9.	IP Application	361
9.1	DNS	361
9.1.1	DNS Client Configuration	361
9.1.2	DNS Proxy Configuration	362
9.2	NTP	364
9.3	FTP/sFTP.....	367

9.4	Telnet/SSH	370
9.5	Utilities.....	372
CHAPTER 10. System Management		373
10.1	SNMP Configuration	373
10.1.1	SNMP Community	373
10.1.2	SNMP Trap	374
10.2	System Management	376
10.2.1	Retrieving System Information.....	376
10.2.2	System Reboot	381
10.3	System Resource Management	383
10.3.1	Retrieving System Status	383
10.3.2	Retrieving and Configuring Threshold.....	386
10.4	Managing Alarm and Event	387
10.4.1	Retrieving Current Alarm.....	388
10.4.2	Retrieving History	389
10.4.3	External Transmission Configuration.....	391
10.4.4	Alarm Filter and Level Configuration	391
10.5	Managing Traffic Performance	393
10.5.1	Managing History Information.....	393
10.5.2	Managing Real-time Information Collection	394
10.6	Managing License Key	395
10.6.1	Managing SLM License (Activation) Key	395
10.6.2	Managing Old License Key	398
10.7	Syslog Configuration	401
10.8	Upgrade	403
10.8.1	Checking Package Version.....	403
10.8.2	System Upgrade	403
10.9	Configuration Management	406
10.10	Debug and Diagnosis	408
10.10.1	Process	408
10.10.2	Retrieving Crash Information	410
10.11	File Management	413
10.11.1	Retrieving Configuration of Current Directory	413
10.11.2	Retrieving Directory List	414
10.11.3	Revising File.....	415
10.11.4	Retrieve File Content.....	415

10.11.5	File Download and Upload	416
10.11.6	Package File	416
10.11.7	Retrieving Storage Media	418
10.11.8	Managing File in Web UI	419
ANNEX A.	CLI Command Structure	421
A.1	configure	421
A.2	show	451
A.3	clear	463
A.4	debug	465
A.5	file	468
A.6	Etc	468
ANNEX B.	Open Source Announcement (WEC8500/WEC8050)	469
ANNEX C.	Open Source Announcement (WEA302/WEA303/ WEA312/WEA313/WEA403/WEA412)	498
ABBREVIATION		524

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1. System Structure for Wireless Enterprise Solution	20
Figure 2. W-EP Network Configuration	21
Figure 3. WEC8500 Interface-Front/Back	23
Figure 4. System LED Configuration.....	23
Figure 5. Management Port Configuration	24
Figure 6. Optic port configuration.....	25
Figure 7. Power module configuration	26
Figure 8. WEC8050 interface-Front/Back	27
Figure 9. Status LED configuration	27
Figure 10. Ethernet Port Configurations.....	28
Figure 11. Basic Configuration of W-EP Wireless LAN System	29
Figure 12. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Redundancy.....	30
Figure 13. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Distributed Clustering Service	32
Figure 14. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Centralized Clustering Service	33
Figure 15. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Multiple Sites consisting of Headquarter and Branches.....	34
Figure 16. AP-APC NAT Environment Configuration Diagram	36
Figure 17. Web UI Connection Window	42
Figure 18. WEC Main Window	43
Figure 19. Operator Account Management Window	44
Figure 20. Operator Account Addition Window	44
Figure 21. Port Management Window.....	47
Figure 22. Port Configuration Change Window.....	48
Figure 23. Interfaces Window (1)	50
Figure 24. Interfaces Window (2)	50
Figure 25. Interfaces Window (3)	51
Figure 26. Interface Group Window (1).....	52
Figure 27. Interface Group Window (2).....	53
Figure 28. Spanning Tree Configuration Window (1)	61
Figure 29. Spanning Tree Configuration Window (2)	62
Figure 30. Spanning Tree Configuration Window (3)	62
Figure 31. Static Routing Configuration Window.....	64
Figure 32. OSPF Configuration Window	66
Figure 33. VRRP-Operation Window	105
Figure 34. VRRP-Circuit Failover Window (1).....	105

Figure 35. VRRP-Circuit Failover Window (2)	105
Figure 36. IPWATCHD Configuration Window.....	106
Figure 37. ACL Configuration Window.....	108
Figure 38. Window where a Time Profile is Applied to ACL	108
Figure 39. ACL Interface Configuration Window (1).....	109
Figure 40. ACL Interface Configuration Window (2).....	109
Figure 41. Admin ACL Configuration Window	111
Figure 42. Time Profile Configuration Window (1)	114
Figure 43. Time Profile Configuration Window (2)	115
Figure 44. Applying to ACL	116
Figure 45. IP Multicast Configuration Window	120
Figure 46. PIM-SM Configuration Window (1)	121
Figure 47. PIM-SM Configuration Window (2)	121
Figure 48. PIM-SM Configuration Window (3)	122
Figure 49. PIM-SM Configuration Window (4)	122
Figure 50. IGMP Snooping Config Window	124
Figure 51. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (1).....	124
Figure 52. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (2).....	125
Figure 53. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (3).....	125
Figure 54. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (4).....	125
Figure 55. APC List Management Window	127
Figure 56. Management interface configuration	128
Figure 57. AP Registration Method Setup Window	131
Figure 58. Redundancy Configuration Window	135
Figure 59. AP retrieving window	136
Figure 60. AP redundancy Configuration Window	137
Figure 61. AP groups configuration Window.....	139
Figure 62. AP Group Addition Window	139
Figure 63. General Configuration Window for AP Group	142
Figure 64. AP Add/Remove Window for AP Group	144
Figure 65. WLAN Add/Remove Window for AP Group	145
Figure 66. 802.11a/n Window for AP Group	146
Figure 67. 802.11b/g/n Window for AP Group	147
Figure 68. Advanced Configuration Window for AP Group	152
Figure 69. Remote AP Group Add/Remove Window	154
Figure 70. AP Add/Remove Window for Remote AP Group.....	155
Figure 71. Local Authentication Configuration Window for Remote AP Group	156
Figure 72. ACL Settings Synchronization-All	158
Figure 73. ACL Settings Synchronization-Remote Group.....	158

Figure 74. AP Time Synchronization Configuration Options.....	160
Figure 75. Adding Access Points.....	161
Figure 76. AP Profile Setting (1).....	164
Figure 77. AP Profile Setting (2).....	166
Figure 78. AP mode configuration.....	167
Figure 79. AP CLI Account Add/Remove Window.....	168
Figure 80. AP SNMP v1/v2c Community Configuration Window.....	170
Figure 81. AP v3 User Configuration Window.....	170
Figure 82. AP Ports window.....	172
Figure 83. AP Ports detail information window.....	172
Figure 84. AP Tech Support Information Receiving Window.....	173
Figure 85. Outdoor AP Create Window.....	175
Figure 86. AP upgrade.....	178
Figure 87. AP upgrade-global.....	178
Figure 88. AP upgrade-individual.....	179
Figure 89. AP upgrade-advanced.....	180
Figure 90. Remote AP Group Upgrade Activation_1.....	181
Figure 91. Remote AP Group Upgrade Activation_2.....	182
Figure 92. Checking Master AP Configuration.....	183
Figure 93. Checking Master AP Configuration.....	183
Figure 94. AP Package Configuration.....	185
Figure 95. Starting AP Upgrade.....	186
Figure 96. Restarting and Upgrading AP.....	188
Figure 97. WLAN basic configuration (1).....	191
Figure 98. WLAN basic configuration (2).....	191
Figure 99. WLAN-based ACL configuration.....	195
Figure 100. Root service management (1).....	198
Figure 101. Root service management (2).....	198
Figure 102. Local Switching Configuration Window of WLAN.....	200
Figure 103. VLAN/ACL/Pre-Auth.ACL Configuration Window of WLAN Allocated to AP.....	201
Figure 104. Initialization of WLAN security function.....	203
Figure 105. WPA/WPA2 PSK configuration.....	206
Figure 106. WPA/WPA2 802.1x Configuration (1).....	209
Figure 107. WPA/WPA2 802.1x Configuration (2).....	210
Figure 108. Static WEP configuration.....	212
Figure 109. Dynamic WEP Configuration Window.....	215
Figure 110. DHCP server configuration.....	216
Figure 111. DHCP Pool (1).....	222
Figure 112. DHCP Pool (2).....	222

Figure 113. DHCP Relay	224
Figure 114. DHCP Proxy	225
Figure 115. Option 82 configuration (1)	227
Figure 116. Option 82 configuration (2)	227
Figure 117. Primary/Secondary server configuration (1).....	229
Figure 118. Primary/Secondary server configuration (2).....	229
Figure 119. Primary/Secondary server configuration (3).....	230
Figure 120. Radio service configuration	232
Figure 121. 802.11a/b/g/n radio (1)	236
Figure 122. 802.11a/b/g/n radio (2)	237
Figure 123. QoS configuration of a wireless terminal (1).....	242
Figure 124. QoS configuration of a wireless terminal (2).....	242
Figure 125. QoS configuration of AP (wireless section).....	246
Figure 126. Configuring QoS profile of a specific terminal.....	248
Figure 127. Configuring voice optimization.....	249
Figure 128. Configuring 802.11h	251
Figure 129. Country code window (1)	254
Figure 130. Country code window (2)	255
Figure 131. Information viewing window.....	257
Figure 132. Handover window.....	260
Figure 133. SIP ALG configuration window	262
Figure 134. Admission control configuration of 802.11a/n	264
Figure 135. 802.11a/n Admission Control Configuration Window	266
Figure 136. RRM configuration window	268
Figure 137. DPC settings	269
Figure 138. DCS settings	272
Figure 139. CHDC settings.....	275
Figure 140. Spectrum Analysis Data.....	284
Figure 141. Controlling Usage per User	288
Figure 142. Clustering window	294
Figure 143. Clustering addition window.....	294
Figure 144. Configuring connection limitation per radio.....	296
Figure 145. Configuring connection limitation per WLAN	297
Figure 146. Voice statistics	299
Figure 147. Detecting WLAN-based communication failure	300
Figure 148. VoIP Stations Retrieval Screen.....	304
Figure 149. Active Call Retrieval Screen	305
Figure 150. Complete Calls Retrieval Screen.....	305
Figure 151. 802.11a/n Admission Control Configuration Window	310

Figure 152. RADIUS server configuration	314
Figure 153. Wireless Intrusion General Configuration Window	321
Figure 154. Managed Rule Configuration Window	323
Figure 155. Managed Addition Window	323
Figure 156. Unmanaged Rule Configuration Window	325
Figure 157. Unmanaged Rule Addition Window	325
Figure 158. List Window to Manually Change Classification	327
Figure 159. Classification Change Window in AP Detail Screen	327
Figure 160. List Window to Manually Remove	328
Figure 161. Manual Remove Change Window in AP Detail Screen	329
Figure 162. Configuration Window for Unauthorized AP Detection Option	330
Figure 163. Configuration Window for Unauthorized Station Detection Option	332
Figure 164. Configuration Window for Channel Validation	333
Figure 165. AP blacklist Configuration Window	335
Figure 166. Managed AP Window	335
Figure 167. Station blacklist Search/Configuration Window	336
Figure 168. Managed Station Search Window	336
Figure 169. Managed SSID Window	337
Figure 170. Managed/Neighbor AP Search/Configuration Window	338
Figure 171. Managed/Neighbor AP List Addition Window	338
Figure 172. Station Allowed Limit Configuration Window	339
Figure 173. WLAN Guest Configuration Window	341
Figure 174. WLAN Web Policy Configuration Window	341
Figure 175. Guest User Configuration Window	344
Figure 176. Guest User List Window	344
Figure 177. Guest Auth Configuration Window	344
Figure 178. Web Auth Configuration Window	345
Figure 179. Web Pass-through Configuration Window	347
Figure 180. Firewall configuration (1)	348
Figure 181. Firewall configuration (2)	349
Figure 182. Access-list configuration	350
Figure 183. NAT configuration (1)	353
Figure 184. NAT configuration (2)	353
Figure 185. MAC configuration	355
Figure 186. MAC entry configuration window(1)	355
Figure 187. MAC entry configuration(2)	356
Figure 188. MAC entry configuration(3)	356
Figure 189. TTACACS+ Server Configuration Window	359
Figure 190. Operator Account Authentication Type Configuration Window	360

Figure 191. DNS client	362
Figure 192. DNS proxy	363
Figure 193. NTP client configuration	366
Figure 194. FTP/SFTP server configuration	369
Figure 195. Telnet/SSH server configuration	371
Figure 196. Adding SNMP community	374
Figure 197. SNMP trap configuration	375
Figure 198. System information	379
Figure 199. Reboot (APC)	381
Figure 200. Reboot (AP)	382
Figure 201. Configuring SNMP alarm threshold	386
Figure 202. Current alarm	388
Figure 203. History	390
Figure 204. Configuring alarm filter and level	392
Figure 205. SLM License Search and Configuration Window	397
Figure 206. Old License Installation Check Window	400
Figure 207. Syslog window	402
Figure 208. Package upgrade (APC)	405
Figure 209. DB Backup/Restore	407
Figure 210. File management window	419

CHAPTER 1. Access Point Controller System Overview

1.1 APC Overview

The Samsung Access Pointer Controller (APC) comprehensively manages the user information and traffics while managing an Access Point (AP), i.e. a device that provides wireless connection service for a user terminal in a Wi-Fi environment. There are two types depending on the AP capacity; WEC8500 and WEC8050. It comprehensively manages all the APs and provides services in a wireless LAN environment. Because AP and APC are connected in tunneling, all the user traffics are exchanged and processed.

The APC is typically installed at a position where it can be connected to a backbone switch, core switch or router in a network of enterprise environment and it controls a wireless LAN AP and provides the functions for Wireless LAN (WLAN) services such as handover and QoS, security/authentication, etc. The Samsung WEC8500 provides its services up to 500 APs. It can provide its services up to 10,000 connected user devices. Meanwhile, the WEC8050 can accommodate maximum 75 APs and provides the service to maximum 1500 user devices.

The APC provides a WLAN network environment through AP management and also provides various communication services required by enterprise customers in a wireless environment by interoperating with other enterprise solutions. It provides Wireless Enterprise (W-EP) solution in an enterprise environment by making the collaboration applications such as telephone, message, or communicator, etc., that has been used in a legacy wire environment, be able to be used in a wireless terminal such as smart phone, tablet PC, or notebook.

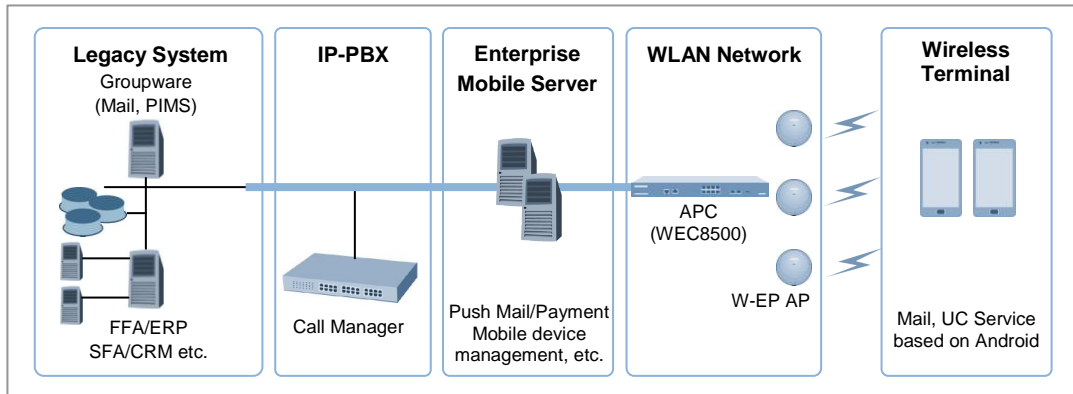


Figure 1. System Structure for Wireless Enterprise Solution

The Samsung W-EP solution, as shown in figure, comprehensively includes various enterprise applications which are provided by wire/wireless infrastructure products and wireless terminals. The WLAN network, a wireless infrastructure solution that provides mobility in an enterprise environment, consists of W-EP wireless LAN Access Point (AP), W-EP AP Controller (APC), and Wireless Enterprise WLAN Manager (WEM). The Samsung APC and W-EP wireless LAN AP are core devices that provide various services such as user authentication, wireless management, voice and data service, etc. in the 802.11-based Wi-Fi environment. The WEM provides convenient configuration environment, various statistics, and event information to an operator.



NOTE

Term

In this manual, the WEC8500/WEC8050 and APC commonly represent Samsung AP Controller. In addition, the AP means Samsung W-EP wireless LAN AP.

1.2 Network Configuration

The network configuration of Samsung W-EP solution that includes APC is shown below.

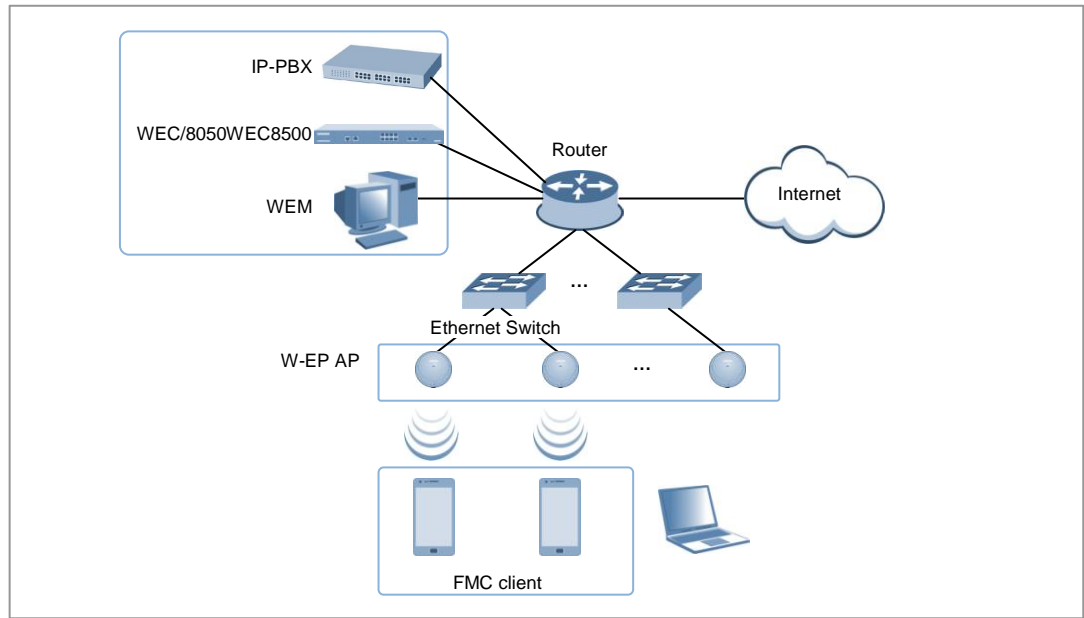


Figure 2. W-EP Network Configuration

IP-PBX

As an enterprise call manager, it is a switch required to provide the Fixed Mobile Convergence (FMC) function to a wireless terminal (optional).

APC (WEC8500/WEC8050)

The APC manages all the W-EP wireless LAN APs installed in an enterprise communication environment and it also manages user information and traffics. Because the W-EP wireless LAN network configuration uses a centralized structure where all the wireless user traffics are in tunneling through the APC, the APC is one of the most important elements related to traffic management and throughput in the W-EP environment. An APC is typically installed at a position where it can be connected to a backbone switch, core switch or router in a network. It controls the W-EP wireless LAN AP and provides handover, QoS, and security/authentication functions.

WEM

In the W-EP wireless LAN environment, various services are provided through a complex network configuration. As many users are involved, its management is complex and difficult. A normal network administrator can hardly handle any problematic issue as well as a normal management task. The WEM is a Network Management System (NMS) that efficiently manages this kind of W-EP wireless LAN network and service environment. It manages a WLAN network, retrieves and configures the status of APC or W-EP wireless LAN AP.

W-EP AP (W-EP Wireless LAN AP)

The W-EP wireless LAN AP is a device that provides wireless connection service to a user terminal. It should be installed by considering the service area or region that will be provided in an enterprise environment. Typically, the number of W-EP wireless LAN APs is determined by considering the size of installation area and the number of users to secure service coverage.

Ethernet Switch

Typically, because an AP is installed in a user area, use a Power over Ethernet (PoE) switch that does not use a power line for the beauties of environment, etc. Install the W-EP wireless LAN APs by considering current consumption and the power capacity PoE switch. In addition, because power drop may occur if the distance between the switch and W-EP wireless LAN AP, the relationship between distance and power must be considered. Typically, the distance between these two must be 100 m or less in order to avoid power drop.

Wireless terminal/FMC Client

Terminal that provides the 802.11a/b/g/n interface such as smart phone, tablet PC, or notebook computer, etc. In an Android smart phone, an enterprise Voice over IP (VoIP) application equipped with the Samsung voice engine is called a FMC client (The FMC client is an option).

Wireless additional service

In the W-EP environment, various application services are required as well as basic wireless connection services.

The Wireless Intrusion Prevention System (WIPS) provides a security service that is one of the most important elements in an enterprise environment. The WIPS can seamlessly receive wireless connection service through the security services such as unauthorized terminal, unauthorized AP, or ad hoc connection blocking, etc.

Location service that manages the location of a terminal in a wireless environment is also an application service required in an enterprise environment. With this, it is possible to manage the location of an effective user or an unauthorized user.

IP application service

The IP application servers required in an existing wire network including Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, DNS server, web server, or RADIUS authentication server are also used in the W-EP environment. Especially, the DHCP server and RADIUS authentication server play a critical role in the wireless environment.

1.3 APC Configuration and Functions

1.3.1 WEC8500 Configuration and Functions

The Configuration and the purpose of each item of WEC8500 are as follows:

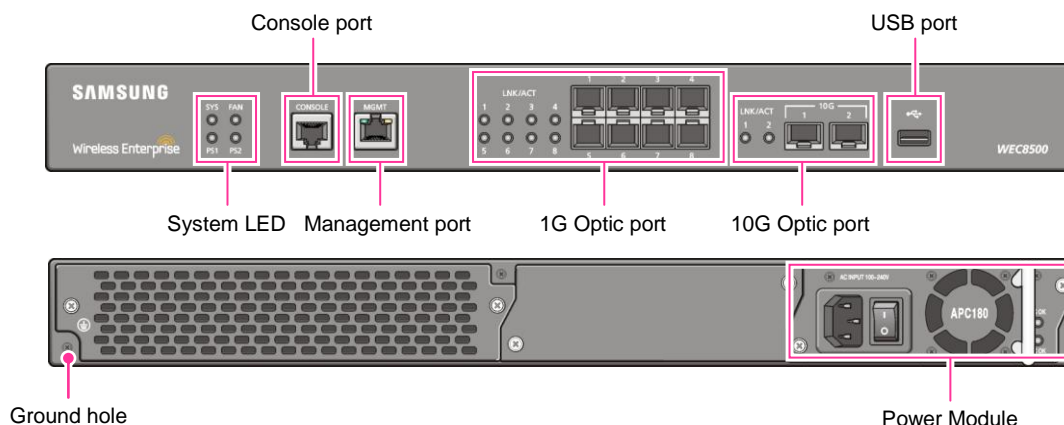


Figure 3. WEC8500 Interface-Front/Back

System LED

System LED indicates the various statuses of system. Each LED displays the following information.

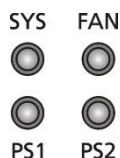


Figure 4. System LED Configuration

LED	Status	Description
SYS	Green	The system is operating normally
	Orange	The system is now booting
	Red	Preparing the system for booting
FAN (fan module)	Green	The installed FAN module is operating normally
	Orange	The system is now booting
	Red	Fan module fault has occurred
PS1 (power module 1)	Green	Normal operation of installed power module 1
	Red	Power is turned off or a fault occurred while the power module 1 is installed.
	Off	Power module 1 is not installed.
PS2 (power module 2)	Green	Normal operation of installed power module 2

LED	Status	Description
module 2)	Red	Power is turned off or a fault occurred while the power module 2 is installed.
	Off	Power module 2 is not installed.

Console port (RS232C)

A console port is used to check the operational status of WEC8500 or for input through the CLI. Its basic requirements are as follows:

- Baud rate: 115200 bps
- Character size: 8 characters
- Parity: None
- Stop bit: 1, Data bit: 8
- Flow control: None

Management port (1 GE UTP)

The WEC8500 provides a 10/100/1000BASE-T port (RJ-45) for management purpose. It is working in 10/100 Mbps half duplex/full duplex mode or in 1000 Mbps full duplex mode. Because it supports the automatic MDI/MDI-X function, you can use a straight-through cable for all the network connections to a PC, server, switch, or network hub.

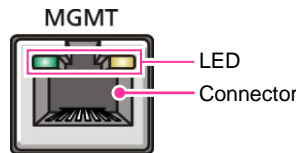


Figure 5. Management Port Configuration

Configuration item	Status	Description
LED	Green	Turned on for link connection
	Orange	Blinking for data exchange
Connector	-	Connector for UTP cable connection

When connecting a cable to the management port, make sure to check if the cable complies with the 10 BASE-T, 100 BASE-TX, or 1000 BASE-T.

- Cable type: UTP or STP cable using RJ-45 connector
 - 10 BASE-T: Category 3 or higher
 - 100 BASE-TX: Category 5 or higher
 - 1000 BASE-T: Category 5 or higher (Category 5e or higher is recommended)
- Isolate from wireless frequency disturbing waves
- Shut down electrical surge

- Separate the electrical wiring of a switch or related devices and the electromagnetic area of network data line
- Cable or connector and safe connection without damaged cable sheath



NOTE

The 1000 BASE-T standard does not support the forced mode.
The auto-negotiation function must be always used for 1000 BASE-T port or trunk connection.

Optic port

It provides two 10 GbE Optic ports and eight 1 GbE Optic ports and the operational status of each port is displayed in LED.

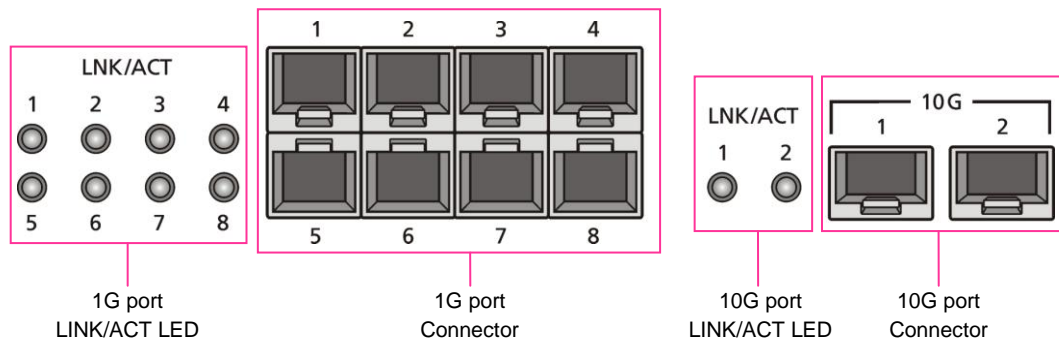


Figure 6. Optic port configuration

Configuration item	Port/LED	Description
10 GE ports	LINK/ACT 1, LINK/ACT 2	LINK/ACT status of each port - Turned on for link connection - Blinking for data exchange
	10G 1, 10G 2	10 GbE Optic module connector
1 GE port	LINK/ACT 1~LINK/ACT 8	LINK/ACT status of each port - Turned on for link connection - Blinking for data exchange
	1G 1~1G 8	1 GbE Optic module connector

USB port (Host 2.0)

The WEC8500 provides a USB host port that supports the upgrade of WEC8500 operation software.

A typical USB memory stick is supported.

Power module

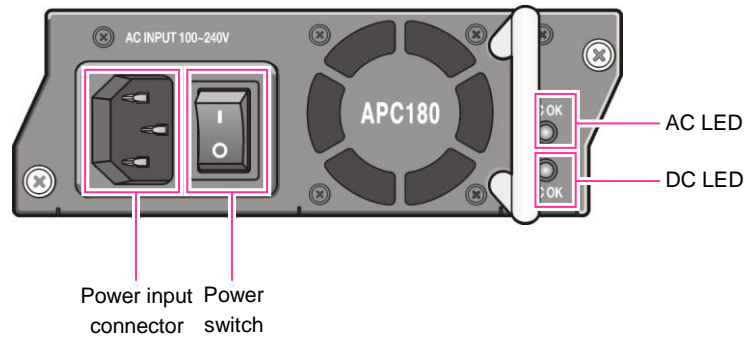


Figure 7. Power module configuration

Configuration item	Description
Power input connector	Connector to connect the power cable to
Power switch	Switch to turn on/off power
AC LED	Turned on when there is a normal AC power input.
DC LED	Turned on when there is a normal DC power output.

1.3.2 WEC8050 Configuration and Functions

The configuration and the purpose of each item of WEC8050 are as follows:

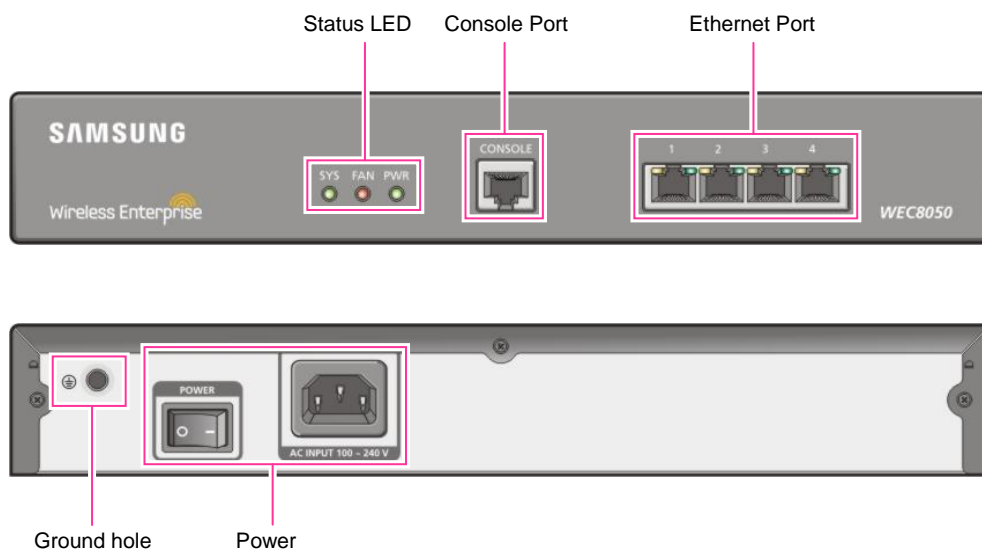


Figure 8. WEC8050 interface-Front/Back

Status LED

This LED indicates the various statuses of system. Each LED displays the following information.



Figure 9. Status LED configuration

LED	Status	Description
SYS	Green	The system is operating normally
	Orange	The system is now booting
	Red	Preparing the system for booting
FAN	Green	The installed FAN module is operating normally
	Orange	The system is now booting
	Red	Fan fault
PWR	Green	The power is supplied normally
	Off	The power is turned off or not supplied

Console port (RS232C)

A console port is provided to check the operational status of WEC8050 or for input through the CLI.

Its basic requirements are as follows:

- Default baud rate: 115200 bps
- Character size: 8 Characters
- Parity: None
- Stop bit: 1, Data bit: 8
- Flow control: None

Ethernet port

It has 4 10/100/1000 Base-T ports.

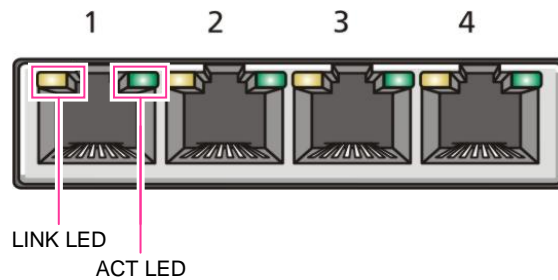


Figure 10. Ethernet Port Configurations

LED	Status	Description
ACT	Orange blinking	Blinking while data exchanging
	Off	No data exchanging
LINK	Green	Link connection display
	Off	No link connection

1.4 APC Application Configuration and Service Scenario

1.4.1 Basic Configuration

To provide wireless connection service using a wireless LAN in the W-EP environment, the W-EP wireless LAN AP that helps a terminal connect to the network through wireless and an APC that controls the terminal are basically required. Especially, the role of APC is critical to guarantee QoS of various services and provide high level of security functions in an Enterprise communication environment. As various elements are required in the W-EP environment, it is necessary to intuitively or organically manage each element via WEM.

In addition, the IP application servers including authentication server, DHCP server, or DNS server which is a basic network configuration element in a wire enterprise environment are also interoperated to provide more convenient and various mobile services to users. One outstanding example is the FMC service that provides enterprise level VoIP in a wireless LAN. With this, the wire/wireless integrated voice service can be provided.

An example of service configuration diagram using the W-EP wireless LAN system is shown in the below figure. The configuration diagram is based on Samsung APC (WEC8500).

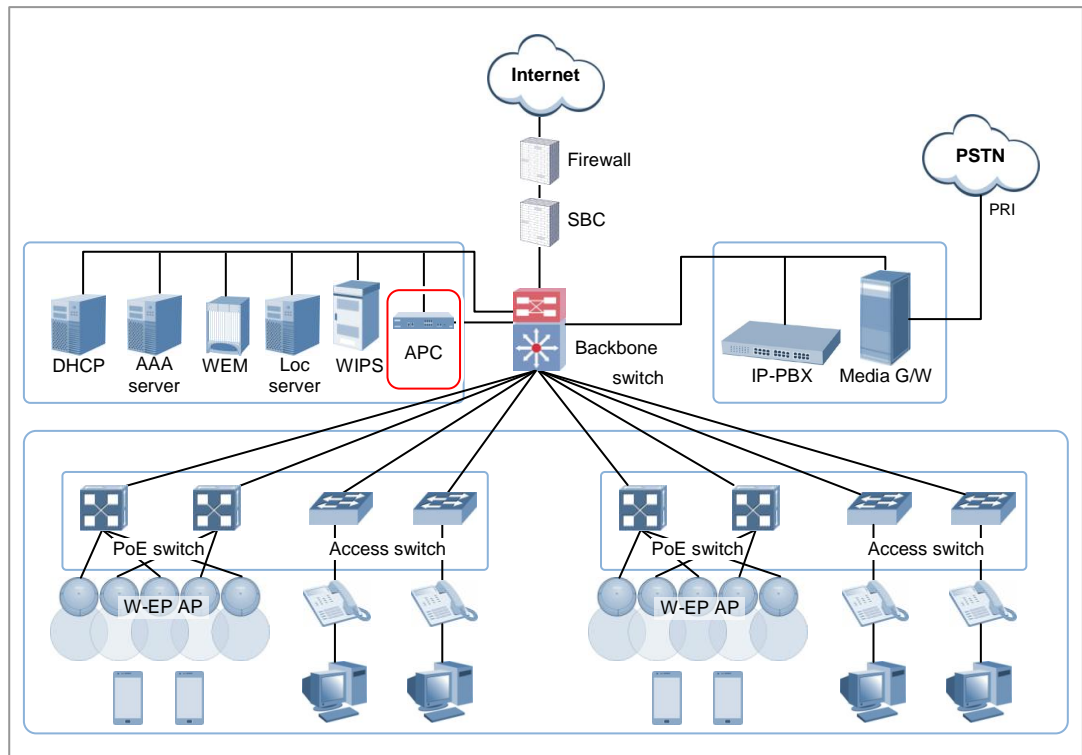


Figure 11. Basic Configuration of W-EP Wireless LAN System

The basic W-EP wireless LAN network configuration is a centralized structure where all the wireless user traffics go through tunneling between APC and W-EP wireless LAN AP. Therefore, the network information such as subnet information allocated to a wireless user depends on the configuration of backbone network where the APC is connected.

This provides the following advantages during network configuration and setup.

- Installing the APC is just adding it to a legacy data center or backbone network. Therefore, the possibility of physical change of core network can be reduced. In addition, separate design of wire/wireless network is easy using the APC as a boundary.
- No dramatic network change is required to install the W-EP wireless LAN AP. An AP installed in a user area is located in various local network environments in a wide region. Although it is unavoidable to install or expand a PoE switch, the modification of local network where wire users are already configured can be minimized.
- Because the APC relays all the user traffics, it can restrict a wireless attacker's effects and provide differentiated service for each user.

1.4.2 Configuration of Multiple APC for Redundancy

The APC provides the redundancy function to guarantee QoS for various services and provide service stability in the W-EP environment.

An example of service configuration diagram for redundancy is shown in the below figure.

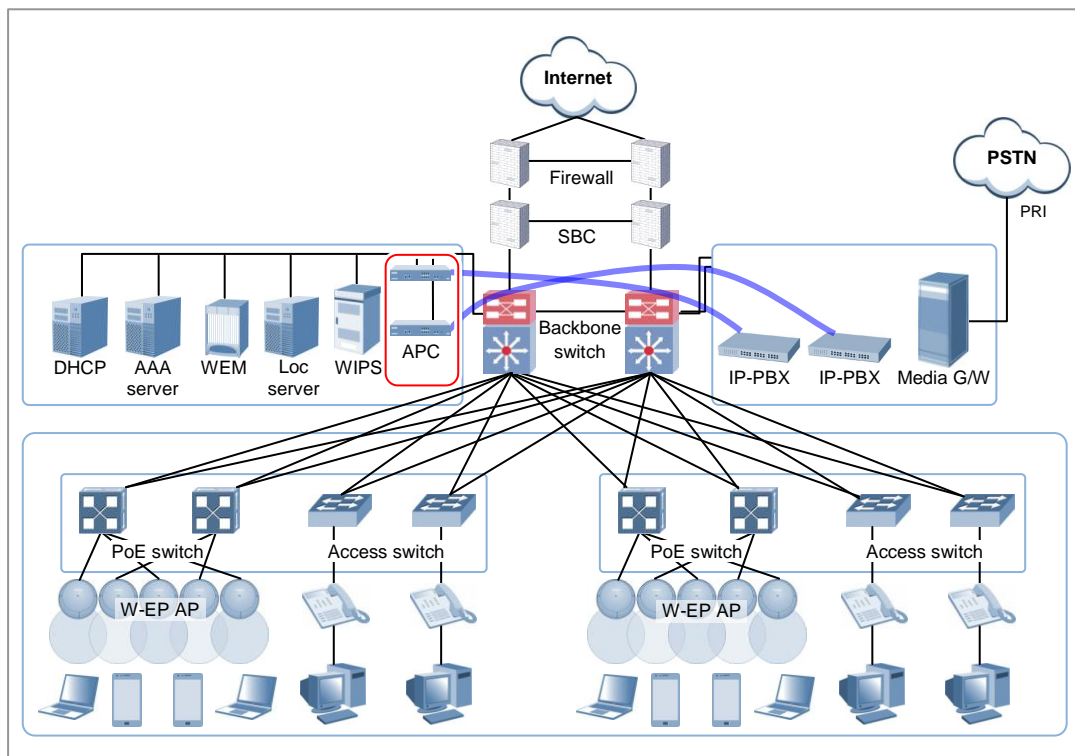


Figure 12. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Redundancy

In this configuration, several APC s are used to minimize service disruption caused by a disconnected APC and to enhance service sustainability. Basically, two or more APC s must be installed in the same site for APC redundancy. The redundancy configuration includes active-active configuration, active-standby configuration, and many-to-one configuration. An operator can select a configuration based on the number of available APC s and redundancy level.

1.4.3 Clustering Configuration using Multiple APC (WEC8500)

The W-EP environment has various area sizes, user density and number of users. If only a single APC is required for service and management, the complexity of network configuration or management is not high. However, if the capacity of a single APC is not sufficient, multiple APC s must be installed for service. The WEC8500 is a Samsung APC model providing the clustering environment.

To set up a wireless LAN network in an environment where multiple WEC8500s are installed, the integrated management system and user service must be provided through clustering configuration between the WEC8500s. This allows inter APC handover. The WEC8500s configured in a cluster provides a service just like a single WEC8500 through periodic information exchange.



NOTE

Inter APC handover

The inter APC handover is a handover between APCs. A clustering group is used to provide this function and this clustering group means a virtual area.

Maximum six WEC8500s can be bound to a single group. An APC in a group cannot be added to another group.

It provides layer 3 handover and the handover is supported when a terminal moves to an APC which have different subnets. A serving APC is called as an anchor APC and a target APC is called as a foreign APC. The control path and also the tunnel for data traffic between APCs provide security using IPsec.

The inter APC handover provides this function both in the standard Wi-Fi handover and Samsung's unique AirMove method.

1.4.3.1 Configuration of Distributed Clustering Service

The configuration of distributed clustering is to install each WEC8500 in a building or a local site according to its capacity. This option can be used when there is no integrated backbone configuration in a site or networks are separated for each building. It is suitable for a site where several buildings are apart from each other.

An example of service configuration diagram is shown in the below figure.

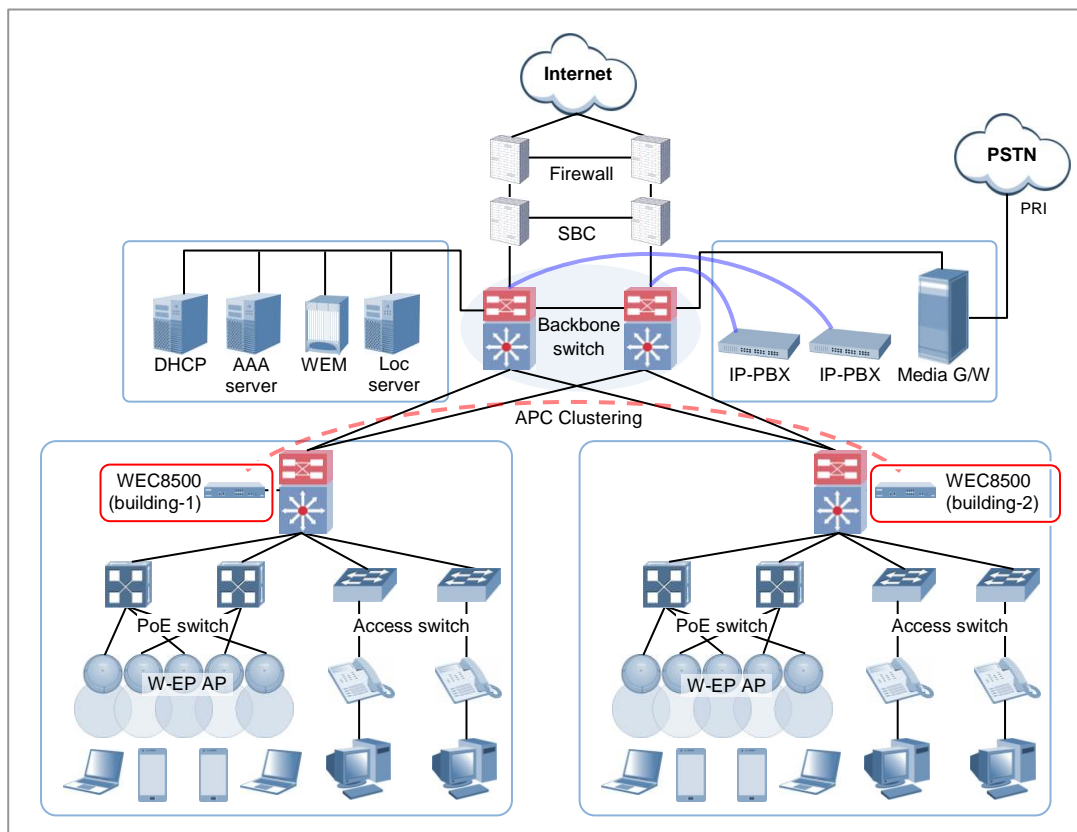


Figure 13. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Distributed Clustering Service

1.4.3.2 Configuration of Centralized Clustering Service

In the centralized cluster configuration, all the WEC8500s in a site are installed in the center. This is suitable when all the networks in a site are configured around the backbone. This option is suitable for a site where several buildings are close to each other or a large building where a seamless handover service is required using one or more WEC8500s. Better performance can be obtained if there is a single backbone network and it is preferable in terms of installation or maintenance because its service configuration is simple.

An example of service configuration diagram is shown in the below figure.

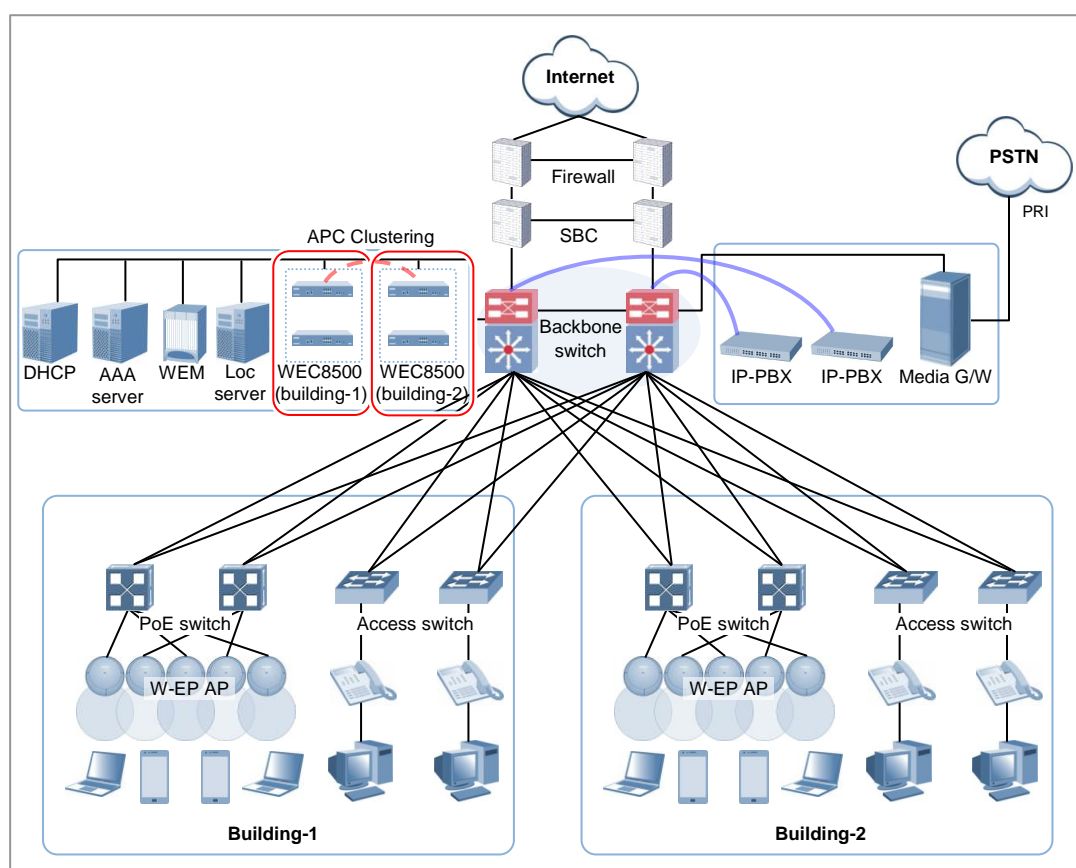


Figure 14. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Centralized Clustering Service

1.4.4 Configuration of Multiple Sites Consisting of Headquarter and Branches

The W-EP wireless LAN network environment usually consists of one headquarter and several branches.

In this case, there are two types of network configuration.

- Hierarchical type: A APC is installed in a branch as well as headquarter.
- Branch AP type: A APC is installed only in a headquarter and only a W-EP wireless LAN AP is installed in a branch.

In the hierarchical type, it is advantageous that each branch can use each different service policy. However, the management in headquarter is complex and many low-capacity APCs must be installed, so the branch AP type is commonly used.

The branch AP type has the same structure as a basic W-EP wireless LAN configuration. A single difference is that a W-EP wireless LAN AP installed in a branch is located at a remote place. The APC in headquarter provides a wireless LAN service in the headquarter building and also provides a wireless LAN service to a remote W-EP wireless LAN AP installed in a branch. As the APC in headquarter manages all the W-EP wireless LAN APs using the same policy, it is easy to use and cost-effective.

An example of service configuration diagram for the branch AP type is shown in the below figure.

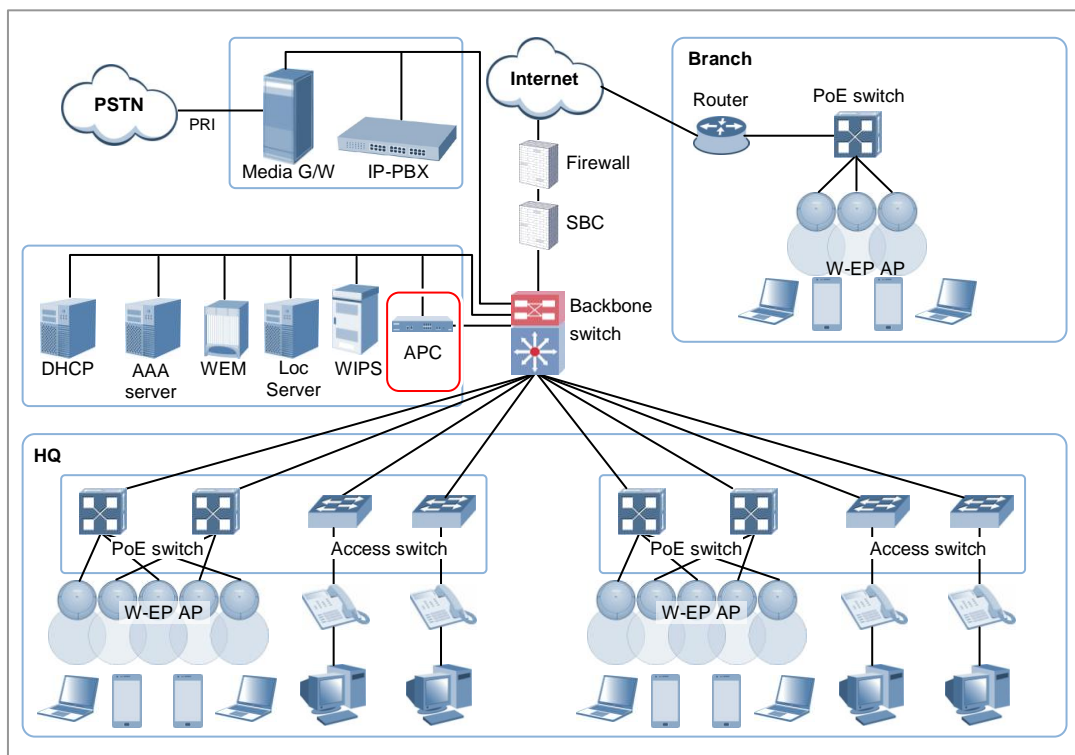


Figure 15. Example of W-EP Wireless LAN System Configuration for Multiple Sites consisting of Headquarter and Branches

If user traffics are concentrated on a single centralized APC when there are many branches or they are far from headquarter, performance may be deteriorated due to the time delay of packet transmission, etc. Therefore, use different operation schemes according to the location of W-EP wireless LAN AP in the configuration of headquarter and branches. In other words, the local W-EP wireless LAN AP in a headquarter does traffic tunneling to an APC and the branch AP installed in a branch switches a user traffic directly to a destination address without tunneling to the APC. Even at this time, the APC in headquarter manages all the W-EP wireless LAN APs and users.

1.5 NAT Configuration between AP and APC

The APC system provides the same services even when the APC or AP is in a NAT environment.

If the APC system is in a NAT environment and obtaining a public IP address is difficult, the APC can be configured to use a private IP address by enabling port mapping on the existing NAT equipment, so that it can provide services to APs on the public IP network and APs existing under other NAT networks.

Using this feature requires that the NAT equipment be applied with the following port settings:

Service	TCP Port	UDP Port	Description
General	20, 21	-	FTP Server
	22	-	Secure Shell
	23	-	Telnet
	80, 443	-	HTTP Web Server
	123	123	NTP
AP-APC Connection	-	5246, 5247	CAPWAP

An example of service configuration diagram for the NAT environment is illustrated below.

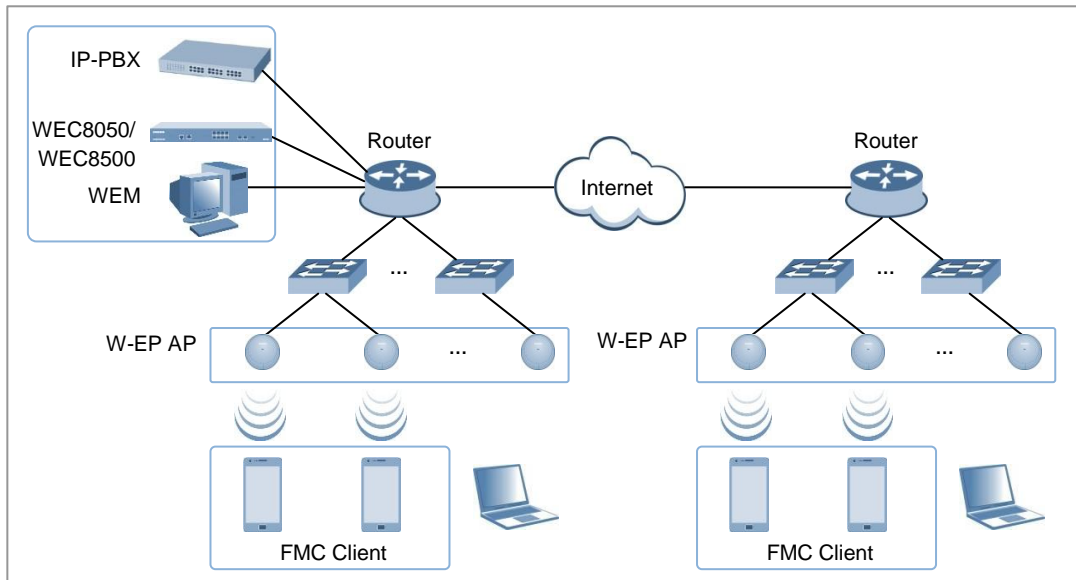


Figure 16. AP-APC NAT Environment Configuration Diagram

CHAPTER 2. Basic System Configuration

In this chapter, the basic system configuration using web and Command Line Interface (CLI) is introduced and how to use CLI and Web UI is described.

2.1 Basic System Configuration

2.1.1 CLI Connection

Connecting to APC using CLI is as follows:

- Direct connection to the system console port
- Telnet or SSH connection through an Ethernet port

When the booting of APC is completed, log into the system as follows:

- 1) For the first connection, log in using ID: 'samsung' and Password: 'samsung'.

```
USERNAME : samsung
PASSWORD : samsung

THIS IS YOUR FIRST LOGIN AFTER USER ACCOUNT HAS BEEN CREATED.

YOU MUST CHANGE YOUR PASSWORD.

ENTER LOGIN PASSWORD      : samsung
ENTER NEW PASSWORD        : *****
CONFIRM NEW PASSWORD      : *****
PASSWORD SUCCESSFULLY CHANGED
WEC8500 #
```

- 2) After the first login, you must change the password. Use the changed password for the next login.



NOTE

The default ID of APC is set to 'samsung' that has an administrator privilege.

2.1.2 Managing Operator Account

An operator who has an administrator privilege (level 1) can create or delete a new operator account. When creating an account, specify the account's privilege level (level 1-4).

To set up operator account related functions, go to configure mode by executing the following command.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure #
```

Adding or deleting an account

The commands used to create or delete an account are as follows:

- `mgmt-user [USERNAME] [USERLEVEL] description [DESCRIPTION]`: Adds a user
- `no mgmt-user [USERNAME]`: Deletes a user

Parameter	Description
USERNAME	User ID
USERLEVEL	User level
DESCRIPTION	Adds user information

```
WEC8050/configure# mgmt-user test 1 description "test account"

PASSWORD           : *****
CONFIRM PASSWORD   : *****
USER(test) CREATED.

WEC8050/configure# no mgmt-user test
user(test) deleted.
```

Retrieving account information

To check user account information use the 'show mgmt-users' command.

Changing Password

Use the 'password' command to change the password for your account.

The 'password' command must be executed in the highest user mode.

```
WEC8500# password
CURRENT PASSWORD   : *****
NEW PASSWORD       : *****
CONFIRM NEW PASSWORD : *****
```

2.1.3 APC Management Port Configuration

To connect to the APC remotely using telnet/SSH or web, it is necessary to set up an IP address to the management port.

Set up the management port as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → 'mgmt0' interface configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface mgmt0
```

- 2) Set up an IP address.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface mgmt0# ip address 100.100.100.1/24
```

2.1.4 SNMP Community Configuration

To connect to the web server of APC, it is necessary to add Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) community through CLI. For more information, see '10.1 SNMP Configuration'.

2.1.5 CLI Basic Usage

The CLI is a text command based interface used to change or retrieve the system settings. Several users can change the settings at the same time using the CLI of the same system. Because privilege per user is already configured, a user can execute a command allowed by the user's privilege. Various commands are available for each system function. For more information, see ANNEX 'CLI Command Structure'.

Command Help

The CLI provides a help for all the commands. To see a help for a command and parameter, enter '?'. Based on an input character, it shows a help for a command or parameter that can be entered.

Category	Description
?	Displays the command list and help at the current level
Command ?	Displays the parameter and help required for a command

A usage example is given below.

```

WEC8500# show ?

      80211a          Display 802.11a network settings
      80211bg        Display 802.11bg network settings
      80211h          Display 802.11h configuration
      access-list    List IP access lists
      alarm           Show alarm information
      ap              Show ap information
      ap-debug        Show ap debug information
      ...
      vap             Show vap information
      version         Show package version information
      vlan            Display VLAN information
      vqm             Show vqm command
      vrrp            VRRP information
      wids            Wids command
      wips            Wips command
      wireless-acl-list Show wireless-acl-list
      wlan            Show wlan information

WEC8500#

```

Command automatic completion function

The CLI supports the command automatic completion function using the TAB key. When you press the TAB key after entering the first few characters of a command, the rest characters of the command that starts with the entered characters is automatically entered. If there are several commands that start with the entered characters, press the TAB key to jump to the next command. The below example shows the 'show', 'save', or 'ssh' command is entered in order by entering 's' and pressing the TAB key.

```

WEC8500# s

```

[When the TAB key is pressed]

```

WEC8500# show

```

[When the TAB key is pressed once again]

```

WEC8500# save

```

Command error

When a command that is not supported by the system is entered, an error message is displayed.

```
WEC8500# command-unknown
      ^
Error : Command 'command-unknown' does not exist
```

When a parameter that is not supported by a command is entered, an error message according to the situation is displayed.

```
WEC8500# configure test
              ^
% Invalid parameter (mandatory)
```

Command modes

When the 'exit' command is entered, the mode is changed to the upper command mode.

2.2 Using Web UI

2.2.1 Web UI Connection

To use the WEC, i.e. Web UI of APC system, the IP address of ethernet port must be set up. When connecting to the IP address of APC ethernet port in a web browser, the below login window is displayed. Log in using a default connection account 'samsung'.



Figure 17. Web UI Connection Window

2.2.2 WEC Main Window

The WEC Main window is a screen that appears first after connecting to an ACP and it consists of menu bar, sub-menus, and detail windows of each menu.

The screenshot shows the Samsung Wireless Enterprise Configuration (WEC) Main Window. At the top, there is a 'Menu bar' with the following items: 'Monitor', 'Configuration', 'Administration', 'Help', 'User [samsung]', 'Logout', 'Save Configuration', and 'Refresh'. Callouts 1 through 5 point to these items. On the left side, there is a 'Sub-menu' with the following categories: Summary, Active Alarm, Access Points, Stations, Rogues, Interference Devices, Statistics, and Resource. The main content area displays a 'Summary' page for a Samsung WEC8500 device. The page includes a hardware image, a system information table, a package information table, a resource & environment status table, and an access points table.

SYSTEM NAME	APC_152
LOCATION	0
MODEL NAME	WEC8500
MAC ADDRESS	00:17:e1:37:00:20:00
HARDWARE VERSION	0.3
FIRMWARE VERSION	0.5
SOFTWARE VERSION	1.2.5
SERIAL NUMBER	
SYSTEM UP TIME	16 day, 4 hour, 42 min, 46 sec
SYSTEM TIME	Wed Jan 2 14:38:01 2013

VERSION	1.2.5.R
BUILD TIME	Sat Dec 15 13:57:36 2012
STATUS	Active

CPU USAGE (%) (CONTROL, DATA)	2%	0%
CPU ALARM STATUS	● 32	● 0
MEMORY USAGE (%)	44%	
MEMORY ALARM STATUS	●	
DISK USAGE (%)	13%	
DISK ALARM STATUS	●	
FAN RPM STATUS	● 4	● 0
TEMPERATURE	● 3	● 0

PROFILE NAME	CURRENT STATIONS
ALL APs	1 ● 1 ● 0 Detail
802.11A/N RADIOS	1 ● 1 ● 0 Detail
802.11B/G/N RADIOS	1 ● 1 ● 0 Detail

AP	COUNT
AP	146 Detail

Figure 18. WEC Main Window

Menu bar

The menu bar consists of the following items:

- ①: Provides detail configuration or retrieval function for each item. When you select each item, lower menus in the sub-menus area are displayed.
- ②: Displays a user login ID.
- ③: Logs out from the WEC.
- ④: Saves the current configuration information into the system.
- ⑤: Refreshes the screen.

Sub-menus

This provides the detail menus for Monitor, Configuration, Administration, or Help in the menu bar.

2.2.3 Managing Operator Account

To add a operator account in Web UI, follow the below procedure.

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Administration> and then select <Local Management Users> menu in the sub menu. The subtree shows the <APC> and <AP> menu items. Select <APC>.

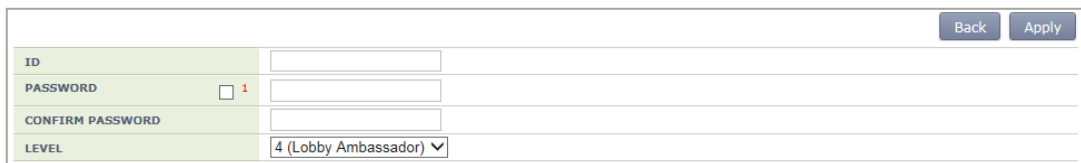
You can add or delete a operator account in the WEC.



<input type="checkbox"/>	NO.	ID	LEVEL
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	samsung	Administrator

Figure 19. Operator Account Management Window

1) To add an account, click the <Add> button.



ID	<input type="text"/>
PASSWORD	<input type="text"/>
CONFIRM PASSWORD	<input type="text"/>
LEVEL	4 (Lobby Ambassador) ▼

Figure 20. Operator Account Addition Window

- 2) Enter an item according to each parameter description, and click the <Apply> button.
- ID: Username to add
 - PASSWORD: User's initial password
 - CONFIRM PASSWORD: Re-enter the initial password
 - LEVEL: User privilege
 - 1 (Administrator): Administrator privilege that allows to execute all the commands
 - 2 (Operator): Can change system configuration.
 - 3 (Monitor): Can retrieve system status.
 - 4 (Lobby Ambassador): Temporary user

CHAPTER 3. Data Network Function

In this chapter, how to set up the data network functions of APC including VLAN, link aggregation, and layer 3 protocol is described.

3.1 Port Configuration

The APC port is configured with a physical interface.

- Physical interface of 11 ports except WEC8500 console port
- Physical interface of 4 ports except WEC8050 console port

3.1.1 Port management



NOTE

The WEC8500 Management port is used to manage the WEC8500. It does not support VLAN and its interface name is 'mgmt0'. The 8 ports at the right side of Management port are 10/100/1000 BASE T-ports and their names are GE1-8. To the right side of the 10/100/1000 BASE T-ports, there are two Gigabit ports, i.e. XE1 and XE2.

Configuration using CLI

To configure the port related function, enter into the interface mode by entering the 'interface [INTERFACE_NAME]' command in the configure mode.

An example of entering into the interface setup mode of the management port is shown below.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface mgmt0
WEC8500/configure/interface mgmt0#
```

The port related CLI commands are as follows:

[auto-nego, speed, duplex]

The commands used to configure an auto-nego, speed, and duplex addresses are shown below. To delete the configuration, enter the 'no' parameter.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge1# speed-duplex ?
 10-full      Set 10Mb/s full-duplex
 10-half      Set 10Mb/s half-duplex
 100-full     Set 100Mb/s full-duplex
 100-half     Set 100Mb/s half-duplex
 1000-full    Set 1000Mb/s full-duplex
 1000-half   Set 1000Mb/s half-duplex
 auto-nego    Set auto negotiation speed/duplex
```

[admin status]

This is a command that makes the port not working. The 'no' parameter is used to restart the port.

```
shutduown
no shutdown
```

[flow control]

This is a command that operates flow control to the port. The 'no' parameter is used to stop the flow control.

```
flowcontrol on
no flowcontrol on
```

[switch port]

This is a command that changes the port to the L2 mode. The 'no' parameter is used to change it to the L3 mode.

```
switchport
no switchport
```

[ip address]

This is a command that configures a static IP address. To delete the configuration, enter the 'no' parameter.

- ip address {A.B.C.D/mask length}
- no ip address {A.B.C.D} {A.B.C.D}
- no ip address {A.B.C.D/mask length}

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Ports> menu in the sub-menus. Operator can configure the ports.

The Ports initial window is shown below.
Operator can check the current status of each port.

Controller > Ports									
INTERFACE NAME	ADMIN STATUS	LINK STATUS	SWITCH PORT	CABLE TYPE	AUTONEGO	PHYSICAL STATUS	FLOW CTRL	MTU SIZE	SFP PORT TYPE
ge1	Up	Down	Disable	Optic	Disable	100 bps	Enable	1500	1G_Service
ge2	Up	Down	Disable	Optic	Disable	100 bps	Disable	1500	1G_Service
ge3	Up	Down	Enable	Copper	Disable	100 bps Full duplex	Disable	1500	1G_Service
ge4	Up	Down	Enable	Optic	Disable	100 bps	Disable	1500	1G_Service
ge5	Up	Down	Enable	Optic	Disable	100 bps	Disable	1500	1G_Service
ge6	Up	Down	Enable	Optic	Disable	100 bps	Disable	1500	1G_Service
ge7	Up	Down	Enable	Optic	Disable	100 bps	Disable	1500	1G_Service
ge8	Up	Down	Enable	Optic	Disable	100 bps	Disable	1500	1G_Service
xe1	Up	Down	Enable	Optic	Enable	Auto Full duplex	Disable	1500	10G_UpLink
xe2	Up	Down	Enable	Optic	Enable	Auto Full duplex	Disable	1500	10G_UpLink
mgmt0	Up	Up	Disable	Copper	Disable	100 bps	Disable	1500	Unspecific

Figure 21. Port Management Window



NOTE

The auto-nego, speed, or duplex can be configured only when the cable type is Copper.

They cannot be configured if the cable type is Optic (The auto-nego should always be enabled whether the cable type is copper or optic).

[Port Configuration Change]

- 1) In the Ports initial window, click the <INTERFACE NAME> button to go to port configuration change window.
- 2) In the port configuration change window, the auto-nego, speed, duplex, admin status, flow control, mtu size, switch port, or ip address, etc. can be configured.

Controller > Ports > **Edit**

INTERFACE NAME	ge5
-----------------------	-----

General

LINK STATUS	Down
CABLE TYPE	Optic
AUTO NEGO	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
SPEED	100 ▾
DUPLEX	None ▾
ADMIN STATUS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Up <input type="radio"/> Down
FLOW CTRL	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
MTU SIZE	1500
SFP PORT TYPE	1G_Service

Switch Port Information

SWITCH PORT STATE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
BRIDGE MODE	<input type="radio"/> Bridge Group <input type="radio"/> LAG --- ▾
STORM CONTROL MODE/LEVEL	Disable ▾ 0

IP Address

IP ADDRESS	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
NETMASK	0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Figure 22. Port Configuration Change Window

3.2 Interface Configuration

The WEC8500 interface consists of the following physical interface and virtual interface.

- Physical interface of 11 ports except console port
- 1024 virtual interfaces using VLAN

There are two types of WEC8050 interface as shown below; physical interface and virtual interface.

- Physical interface of 4 ports except console port
- 128 virtual interfaces using VLAN

3.2.1 Interface management



NOTE

The WEC8500 Management port is used to manage the WEC8500. It does not support VLAN and its interface name is 'mgmt0'. The 8 ports at the right side of Management port are 10/100/1000 BASE T-ports and their names are GE1-8. To the right side of the 10/100/1000 BASE T-ports, there are two Gigabit ports, i.e. XE1 and XE2.

Configuration using CLI

To configure the interface related function, go to the interface mode by entering the 'interface [INTERFACE_NAME]' command in the configure mode. An example of entering into the interface mode of the management port is shown below.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface mgmt0
WEC8500/configure/interface mgmt0#
```

The interface related CLI commands are as follows:

[ip address]

This is a command that configures a static IP address. The 'no' parameter is used to delete the configuration.

- ip address {A.B.C.D/mask length}
- no ip address {A.B.C.D} {A.B.C.D}
- no ip address {A.B.C.D/mask length}

[ip address dhcp]

This is a command that configures a dynamic IP address using DHCP. The ‘no’ parameter is used to delete the configuration.

- ip address dhcp
- no ip address dhcp

[shutdown]

This is a command that makes the interface not working. The ‘no’ parameter is used to restart the interface.

- shutdown
- no shutdown

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Interfaces> menu in the sub-menus. You can configure an interface and VLAN.

The Interface initial window is shown below.

INTERFACE NAME	VLAN ID	IP ADDRESS	ADMIN STATUS	OPER STATUS
lo	-	1.1.1.1	up	up
VLAN0010	10	10.10.10.3	up	down
lo	-	127.0.0.1	up	up
mgmt0	-	192.168.5.132	up	up

Figure 23. Interfaces Window (1)

[Adding VLAN]

- 1) In the Interface initial window, click the <Add> button to go to VLAN creation window.
- 2) Enter an INTERFACE NAME and VLAN ID in the VLAN creation window. The INTERFACE NAME describes a VLAN to create and English characters without a space, numbers, and ‘_’ can be used. The VLAN ID is the number from 1 to 4094 and it specifies a unique VLAN value. Click the <Apply> button to go to detail configuration screen.

Figure 24. Interfaces Window (2)

- 3) Perform detail configuration in the VLAN detail configuration window.
 If you specify PRIMARY DHCP SERVER or SECONDARY DHCP SERVER in the DHCP area, you can specify the configuration of a DHCP server.
 After configuration, click the <Apply> button to apply it to the system.

INTERFACE NAME	123		
VLAN ID	123		
ADMIN STATUS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Up <input type="radio"/> Down		

Physical

PORTS	MODE	HYBRID EGRESS_TAGGED
ge1	Trunk	Service Disable
ge2	Trunk	Service Disable
ge3	Not Used	Service Disable
ge4	Not Used	Service Disable
ge5	Not Used	Service Disable
ge7	Not Used	Service Disable
ge8	Not Used	Service Disable
xe1	Not Used	Service Disable
xe2	Not Used	Service Disable

Address

IP ADDRESS	123	123	123	1
NETMASK	255	255	255	1

DHCP

GLOBAL USE	<input type="checkbox"/>
PRIMARY DHCP SERVER	192 . 168 . 22 . 1
SECONDARY DHCP SERVER	1 . 1 . 1 . 1
OPTION 82 STATE	Disable
OPTION 82 TYPE	AP-MAC

Access Control List

ACL NAME	-----
----------	-------

Figure 25. Interfaces Window (3)

[Deleting VLAN]

In the Interface initial window, click the <Delete> button to delete a selected VLAN.
 The select VLAN cannot be deleted if it is being used in the system.

3.2.2 Managing Interface Group

To use WLAN and other services, it is necessary to configure an interface into an interface group.

Configuration using CLI

An example of entering into the group configuration mode of ifg_01 interface is shown below.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# if-group ifg_01
```

Interface Group related commands are as follows:

[Creating or Deleting Interface group]

This command creates an interface group. Use 'no' parameter to delete an interface group.

- if-group [INTERFACE_GROUP_NAME]
- no if-group [INTERFACE_GROUP_NAME]

[Adding or deleting Interface]

This command adds an interface to an interface group being configured. Use 'no' parameter to delete an interface.

- add-if [INTERFACE_GROUP_NAME]
- no add-if [INTERFACE_GROUP_NAME]

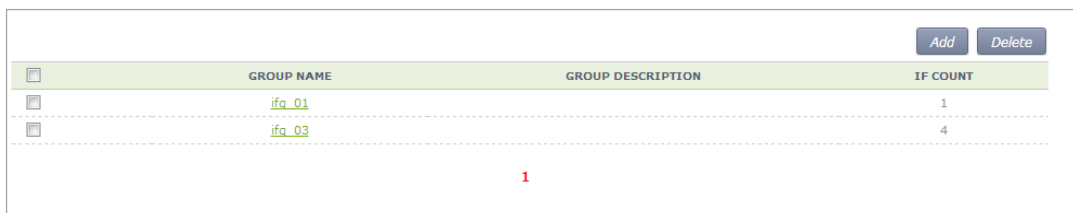
[Retrieving Interface Group Status]

This command retrieves the configuration status of an interface group.

- show if-group

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Interfaces Groups> menu in the sub-menus. Click the <Add> or <Delete> button to add or delete an interface group.



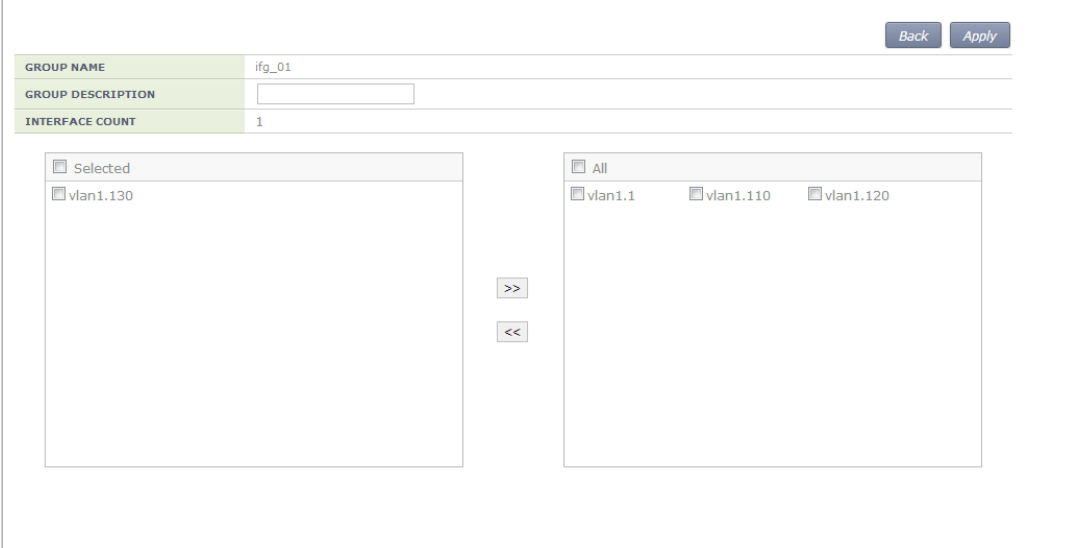
	GROUP NAME	GROUP DESCRIPTION	IF COUNT
<input type="checkbox"/>	ifg_01		1
<input type="checkbox"/>	ifg_03		4

1

Figure 26. Interface Group Window (1)

Follow the below procedure to add an interface group.

- 1) In the Interface group initial window, click the **<Add>** button.
- 2) Enter the **GROUP NAME** and **GROUP DESCRIPTION** information and then select the **VLAN** interface.



The screenshot displays the 'Interface Group Window (2)' configuration interface. At the top right, there are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons. Below these are three input fields: 'GROUP NAME' with the value 'ifg_01', 'GROUP DESCRIPTION' which is empty, and 'INTERFACE COUNT' with the value '1'. The main area is divided into two panes. The left pane, titled 'Selected', contains a single entry 'vlan1.130'. The right pane, titled 'All', contains three entries: 'vlan1.1', 'vlan1.110', and 'vlan1.120'. Between the two panes are two arrow buttons: '>>' and '<<'. The 'Selected' pane has a header with a checkbox and the text 'Selected', and the 'All' pane has a header with a checkbox and the text 'All'.

Figure 27. Interface Group Window (2)

- 3) Click the **<Apply>** button to apply the configuration.

3.3 VLAN Configuration

3.3.1 VLAN

Configuration using CLI

To configure VLAN, go to the VLAN interface mode by executing the following command.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface vlan
WEC8500/configure/interface vlan#
```

The related command is shown below and the range of VLAN ID is 1-4094.

[vlan bridge]

This command creates VLAN. The 'no' parameter is used to delete VLAN.

- vlan [VLAN_ID] bridge 1
- no vlan [VLAN_ID] bridge 1

[switchport access vlan]

This command set the VLAN mode to the access or hybrid mode. The 'no' parameter is used to delete the VLAN configuration.

- switchport { access/hybrid } vlan [VLAN_ID]

[switchport mode]

This command configures the mode of switch port. The 'no' parameter is used to delete the configuration.

- switchport mode { access/hybrid/trunk }
- no switchport mode

[switchport hybrid allowed vlan]

This command configures the mode of switch port to hybrid. The 'no' parameter is used to delete the configuration.

- switchport hybrid allowed vlan: Configures VLAN to hybrid.
- switchport hybrid allowed vlan all: Configures all the allowed VLANs to hybrid.
- switchport hybrid allowed vlan none: Stops VLAN data transmission/reception.
- switchport hybrid allowed vlan add [VLAN_ID]: Adds VLAN to the hybrid mode.
- switchport hybrid allowed vlan remove [VLAN_ID]: Deletes VLAN from the hybrid mode.
- no switchport hybrid vlan: Deletes all the hybrid settings.

[switchport trunk allowed vlan]

This command configures the mode of switch port to trunk. The 'no' parameter is used to delete the configuration.

- switchport trunk allowed vlan: Configure VLAN to the trunk mode.
- switchport trunk allowed vlan all: Configure all the VLANs to the trunk mode.
- switchport trunk allowed vlan none: Stops VLAN data transmission/reception.
- switchport trunk allowed vlan add [VLAN_ID]: Adds VLAN to the trunk mode.
- switchport trunk allowed vlan remove [VLAN_ID]: Removes VLAN with the trunk mode.
- no switchport trunk vlan: Removes all the trunk settings.

[show vlan]

This command retrieves VLAN configuration status.

- show vlan [VLAN_ID]: Displays specific VLAN information.
- show vlan all bridge 1: Displays all the VLAN information.
- show vlan brief: Displays all the VLAN information briefly.
- show vlan dynamic bridge 1: Displays dynamic VLAN information.
- show vlan static bridge 1: Displays static VLAN information.

[Typical configuration procedure]

The typical configuration procedure of VLAN is as follows:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# bridge 1 protocol mstp
WEC8500/configure # vlan database
WEC8500/configure/vlan#vlan {2-4094} bridge 1
WEC8500/configure/vlan# exit
WEC8500/configure# interface vlan1.{2-4094}
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Interfaces> menu in the sub-menus.

For more information about configuration procedure, see '3.2.1 Interface Management'.

3.3.2 Bridge

To set up bridge related functions, go to configure mode by executing the following command

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

The bridge related commands are as follows:

[bridge address]

This command configures a bridge address. The 'no' parameter is used to clear the configuration.

- bridge 1 address [MAC] [forward/discard] [IFNAME]
- no bridge 1 address [MAC] [forward/discard] [IFNAME]

Parameter	Description
MAC	MAC address. Entered in the format of HHHH.HHHH.HHHH.
forward/discard	- forward: Configures forward matching frame. - discard: Configures discard matching frame.
IFNAME	Interface name of a bridge.

[bridge ageing time]

This command configures the age-out time of a bridge. The 'no' parameter is used to clear the configuration.

- bridge-group 1 ageing-time [AGEINGTIME]
- no bridge-group 1 ageing-time

Parameter	Description
AGEINGTIME	age-out time (range: 10-1000000 s)

[bridge protocol]

This command creates a bridge in one of the IEEE 802.1Q Spanning-Tree Protocol (STP), IEEE802.1s multiple STP (MSTP), or IEEE 802.1W Rapid STP (RSTP) protocol.

- bridge 1 protocol [PROTOCOL]
- no bridge 1 protocol

Parameter	Description
PROTOCOL	Protocol to configure (ieee/mstp/rstp) - ieee: STP - mstp: MSTP - rstp: RSTP

[clear mac address-table]

This command deletes the filtering database of a default bridge.

- clear mac address-table [OPTION] [KIND] [WORD]

Parameter	Description
OPTION	Filtering database option (static/multicast) - static: Filtering database item that is configured as static - multicast: Filtering database item that is automatically configured by the multicast protocol
KIND	Filtering database type (address/vlan/interface) - address: Filtering database using a MAC address - vlan: Filtering database using the VLAN information. - interface: Filtering database using the interface information
WORD	Option

[clear mac address-table dynamic]

This command deletes bridge operation among the filtering database of a default bridge.

- clear mac address-table dynamic [KIND] [WORD]

Parameter	Description
KIND	Filtering database type (address/vlan/interface) - address: Filtering database using a MAC address - vlan: Filtering database using the VLAN information. - interface: Filtering database using the interface information
WORD	Option

[clear mac address-table dynamic bridge]

This command deletes the filtering database of bridge operation.

- clear mac address-table dynamic bridge [BRIDGE_NAME]
- clear mac address-table dynamic [address/interface/vlan] [WORD] bridge [NAME]

Parameter	Description
KIND	Filtering database type (address/vlan/interface) - address: Filtering database using a MAC address - vlan: Filtering database using the VLAN information. - interface: Filtering database using the interface information
WORD	Option
BRIDGE_NAME	Bridge name

[show bridge]

This command retrieves bridge information.

- show bridge

[show interface switchport bridge]

This command retrieves the bridge information, i.e. the layer 2 protocol characteristic information of the current VLAN, of a switch port.

- show interface switchport bridge [BRIDGE_NAME]

Parameter	Description
BRIDGE_NAME	Bridge name

[switchport]

This command configures a switch port, i.e. the layer 2 protocol characteristic information of the current VLAN. The 'no' parameter is used for default configuration. Go to interface mode and then execute the command.

- switchport
- no switchport

3.3.3 Spanning Tree

Configuration using CLI

To set up spanning tree related functions, go to configure mode by executing the following command.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

The related command is as follows.

[bridge forward-time]

This command configures the forward time of a bridge. The 'no' parameter is used for default configuration.

- bridge 1 forward-time [FORWARD_DELAY]
- no bridge 1 forward-time

Parameter	Description
FORWARD_DELAY	Forward time delay (range: 4-30 s, default: 15)

[bridge hello-time]

This command configures the hello time of a bridge. The time required when a bridged LAN is changed to Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) is called as hello-time. The 'no' parameter is used for default configuration.

- bridge 1 hello-time [HELLOTIME]
- no bridge 1 hello-time

Parameter	Description
HELLOTIME	Hello BPDU interval (range: 1-10 s)

[bridge instance priority]

This command configures the bridge priority of MST instance. The 'no' parameter is used to delete priority.

- bridge 1 instance [INSTANCE_ID] priority [BRIDGE_PRIORITY]
- no bridge 1 instance [INSTANCE_ID]

Parameter	Description
INSTANCE_ID	Instance ID (range: 1-64)
BRIDGE_PRIORITY	Bridge priority (range: 0-61440)

[bridge max-age]

This command configures the max-age of a bridge. The 'no' parameter is used for default configuration.

- bridge 1 max-age [MAXAGE]
- no bridge 1 max-age

Parameter	Description
MAXAGE	Configures a maximum time (range: 6-40 s)

[bridge max-hops]

This command configures the maximum allowed number of hops of a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) bridge in the MST area.

The 'no' parameter is used for default configuration.

- bridge 1 max-hops [HOP_COUNT]
- no bridge 1 max-hops

Parameter	Description
HOP_COUNT	Maximum allowed number of hops

[bridge multiple-spanning-tree enable]

This command configures a MSTP bridge. The 'no' parameter is used to clear the configuration.

- bridge 1 multiple-spanning-tree enable
- no bridge 1 multiple-spanning-tree enable

[bridge rapid-spanning-tree enable]

This command configures a RSTP bridge. The 'no' parameter is used to clear the configuration.

- bridge 1 rapid-spanning-tree enable
- no bridge 1 rapid-spanning-tree enable(bridge-forward)

[bridge spanning-tree enable]

This command configures a STP bridge. The 'no' parameter is used to clear the configuration.

- bridge 1 spanning-tree enable
- no bridge 1 spanning-tree enable(bridge-forward)

[bridge priority]

This command configures the priority of a bridge. The 'no' parameter is used to delete a priority.

- bridge 1 priority [PRIORITY]
- no bridge 1 priority

Parameter	Description
PRIORITY	Bridge priority (range: 0-61440)

[bridge shutdown]

This command clears bridge settings. The 'no' parameter is used to restart a bridge.

- bridge shutdown [1-32]
- no bridge shutdown [1-32]

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <MSTP> menu in the sub-menus.

The sub-menus of the MSTP menu are as follows:

- Config: Configures the spanning tree.
- Instance: Manages the MSTP VLAN instance.
- Port: Manages the MSTP port.

[Configuring Spanning Tree]

After selecting the <Config> menu, enter configuration information and then click the <Apply> button.



REGION	Default	Apply
REVISION	0	

Figure 28. Spanning Tree Configuration Window (1)

[Managing the MSTP VLAN instance]

When you select the <Instance> menu, the configured MSTP VLAN Instance list is displayed on the window. Click the <Add> or <Delete> button to add or delete an instance.

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled 'Instance'. At the top right, there are two buttons: 'Add' (highlighted with a red box) and 'Delete'. Below the buttons is a table with the following data:

ID	VLAN IF NAME	PRIORITY	DESIGNATED ROOT	BRIDGE ID	ROOT PORT
1	vlan1.1	4096	10.01.F4.D9.FB.10.20.38	10.01.F4.D9.FB.10.20.38	0

Below the table, there is a red number '1' centered on the page.

Figure 29. Spanning Tree Configuration Window (2)

[Managing MSTP Port]

When you select the <Port> menu, the configured MSTP Port list is displayed on the window. Click the <Add> or <Delete> button to add or delete a port.

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled 'Port'. At the top right, there are two buttons: 'Add' (highlighted with a red box) and 'Delete'. Below the buttons is a table with the following data:

INSTANCE ID	IF NAME	PRIORITY	PATH COST	PORT STATE	DESIGNATED ROOT	DESIGNATED COST	DESIGNATED BRIDGE	DESIGNATED PORT
1	ge1	16	1	0	00.00.F4.D9.FB.10.20.38	0	00.00.F4.D9.FB.10.20.38	00.00

Figure 30. Spanning Tree Configuration Window (3)

3.4 Layer 3 Protocol Configuration

This provides the IP address configuration and static/dynamic routing configuration of an interface. The APC provides the Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) routing protocol.

3.4.1 IP Address Configuration

The procedure for IP address configuration is given below.

- 1) Go to configure → interface configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface ge2
```

- 2) Set up an IP address.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip address 100.100.100.1/24
```

- 3) Enable the interface.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# no shutdown
```

3.4.2 Static Routing Configuration

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

- 2) Configure static routing.

```
WEC8500/configure# ip route 10.2.3.0/24 30.30.30.2
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <Static Route> menu in the sub-menus.

The configured static route list is displayed on the window. When you click the <Add> or <Delete> button, you can add or delete a static routing entry.

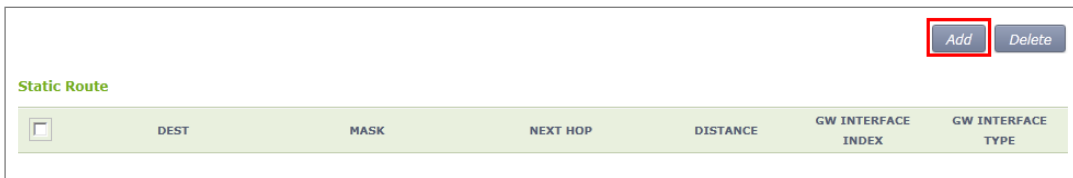


Figure 31. Static Routing Configuration Window

After adding or deleting an entry, check if the information is reflected to the list in the Static Route window. If the added information is not displayed, it means the added routing information is not enabled. If the operational status of an interface that will be used as a routing result is not UP, check the interface status through CLI or Web UI.

Because only enabled routing entries are listed in the Web UI, you cannot remove a disabled routing entry.

3.4.3 IP Multicast Routing Configuration

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Enable or disable multicast-routing.
 - ip multicast-routing
 - no multicast-routing
- 3) Check multicast-routing using the 'show running-config network' command.

3.4.4 PIM Configuration

The procedure for Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) configuration is given below.

- 1) Go to configure → interface configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface ge2
```

- 2) Configure the PIM sparse mode to an interface.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip pim sparse-mode
```

- 3) Check a configured PIM using the 'show running-config network' command.
To check the multicast-routing table, use the 'show ip mroute' command.

```
WEC8500# show ip mroute
(90.90.1.242, 224.0.1.1)      Iif: mgmt0      Oifs: pimreg
```

3.4.5 OSPF Configuration

3.4.5.1 General settings

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → ospf configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# router ospf
WEC8500/configure# router ospf ?
  1 - 10                OSPF process ID
```

- 2) Configure the process ID from 1 to 10.

```
WEC8500/configure# router ospf ?
  1 - 10                OSPF process ID
WEC8500/configure# router ospf 2
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
```

Parameter	Description
OSPF process ID	Configure the process ID from 1 to 10.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

The OSPF initial window is shown below.

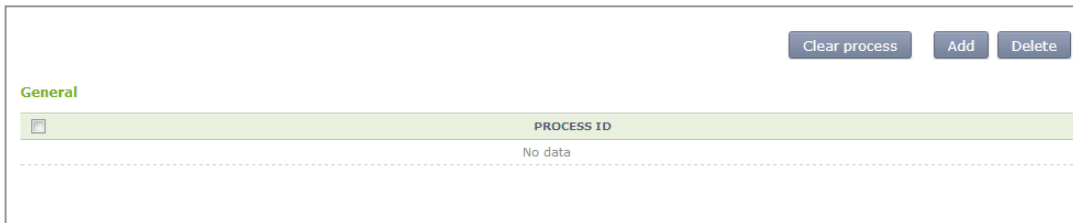
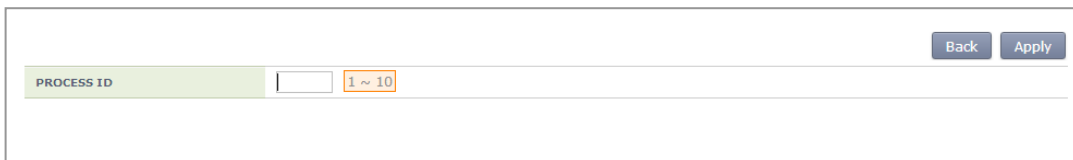


Figure 32. OSPF Configuration Window

Click the <Add> button and configure the PROCESS ID to 1-10 in the below screen.



Configuration using CLI

1) Go to configure → ospf configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configuration# router ospf
WEC8500/configuration# router ospf ?
 1 - 10                OSPF process ID
WEC8500/configuration# router ospf 2
WEC8500/configuration/router/ospf 2#
```

2) The detail configuration items of a process ID are as follows:

```
WEC8500/configuration/router/ospf 2# ?

  area                OSPF area parameters
  auto-cost           Calculate OSPF interface cost according
to bandwidth
  capability           Enable specific OSPF feature
  compatible           OSPF compatibility list
  default-information Control distribution of default
information
  default-metric       Set metric of redistributed routes
  distance             Define an administrative distance
  distribute-list       Filter networks in routing updates
```

exit	Exit from router mode
host	OSPF stub host entry
max-concurrent-dd	Maximum number allowed to process DD
concurrently	
maximum-area	Maximum number of ospf area
neighbor	Specify a neighbor router
network	Enable routing on an IP network
ospf	OSPF specific commands
overflow	Control overflow
passive-interface	Suppress routing updates on an interface
redistribute	Redistribute information from another
routing protocol	
router-id	Router-id for the OSPF process
summary-address	Configure IP address summaries
timers	Adjust routing timers

3) Router ID configuration
Enter an IP address to use.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# router-id ?
A.B.C.D          OSPF router-id in IP address format
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# router-id 10.10.0.1 ?
<cr>
```

Parameter	Description
OSPF router-id in IP address	Enter an IP address.

4) AUTO COST configuration
Enter an OSPF cost value (1-4294967) to use.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# auto-cost ?
reference-bandwidth      Use reference bandwidth method to assign
OSPF cost
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# auto-cost reference-bandwidth ?
1 - 4294967             The reference bandwidth in terms of
Mbits per second

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# auto-cost reference-bandwidth 200 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# auto-cost reference-bandwidth 200
```

Parameter	Description
reference-bandwidth	Enter a value from 1-4294967.

5) CAPABILITY OPAQUE configuration

Enter the capability opaque.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# capability ?
    opaque                Opaque LSA
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# capability opaque ?
    <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# capability opaque
```

Parameter	Description
Capability opaque	Enabled when the CLI is entered.

6) COMPATIBLE RFC configuration

Enter the compatible rfc1583.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# compatible ?
    rfc1583                Compatible with RFC 1583
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# compatible rfc1583 ?
    <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# compatible rfc1583
```

Parameter	Description
compatible rfc1583	Enabled when the CLI is entered.

7) DEFAULT METRIC configuration

Enter the DEFAULT METRIC (1-16777214) to use.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-metric ?
    1 - 16777214          Default metric
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-metric 3 ?
    <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-metric 3
```

Parameter	Description
Default metric	Enter a value from 1-16777214.

8) MAX CONCURRENT DD configuration

Enter the MAX CONCURRENT DD (1-65535) to use.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# max-concurrent-dd ?
    1 - 65535              Number of DD process
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# max-concurrent-dd 2 ?
    <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# max-concurrent-dd 2
```

9) MAXIMUM AREA configuration

Enter the DEFAULT METRIC (1-4294967294) to use.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# maximum-area ?
 1 - 4294967294          Area limit
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# maximum-area 3 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# maximum-area 3
```

10) SPF TIMER (MILLISECONDS) configuration

Configure the SPF TIMER (MILLISECONDS) value.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# timers ?
  spf          OSPF SPF timers
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# timers spf ?
  exp          Use exponential backoff delays
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# timers spf exp ?
  0 - 2147483647 Minimum Delay between receiving a change
to SPF calculation in
                    milliseconds
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# timers spf exp 3 ?
  0 - 2147483647 Maximum Delay between receiving a change
to SPF calculation in
                    milliseconds
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# timers spf exp 3 100 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# timers spf exp 3 100
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

Click a PROCESS ID that user wants to configure. The OSPF configuration window is shown below.

Use the value configured in ‘Configuration using CLI’ as a user-defined value in the below screen.

		Back	Apply
PROCESS ID	2		
ROUTER ID	10 . 10 . 0 . 1		
AUTO COST	100		
CAPABILITY OPAQUE	Enable ▾		
COMPATIBLE RFC 1583	Disable ▾		
DEFAULT METRIC	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="text"/>		
MAX CONCURRENT DD	5		
MAXIMUM AREA	20		
ABR TYPE	Cisco ▾		
SPF TIMER (MILLISECONDS)	500 ~ 50000		

The value configured in ‘Configuration using CLI’ is shown in the below screen.

		Back	Apply
PROCESS ID	2		
ROUTER ID	10 . 10 . 0 . 1		
AUTO COST	200		
CAPABILITY OPAQUE	Enable ▾		
COMPATIBLE RFC 1583	Enable ▾		
DEFAULT METRIC	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 3 <input type="text"/>		
MAX CONCURRENT DD	2		
MAXIMUM AREA	3		
ABR TYPE	Cisco ▾		
SPF TIMER (MILLISECONDS)	500 ~ 50000		

3.4.5.2 Default Information Configuration of General Settings

Configuration using CLI

1) Detail configuration of OSPF default-information

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information ?
  originate          Distribute a default route
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate ?
  always            Always advertise default route
  metric           OSPF default metric
  metric-type      OSPF metric type for default routes
  route-map        Route map reference

<cr>

```

2) Configuration of default-information ALWAYS

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate ?

  always            Always advertise default route
  metric           OSPF default metric
  metric-type      OSPF metric type for default routes
  route-map        Route map reference

<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate
always ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate always

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#

```

3) Configuration of default-information METRIC

Configure the OSPF metric (0-16777214) value.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate
metric ?
  0 - 16777214      OSPF metric
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate metric
3 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate metric
3
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#

```

- 4) Configuration of default-information METRIC-TYPE
 Configure the OSPF metric-type (1/2) value.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate metric-
type ?
  1          Set OSPF External Type 1 metrics
  2          Set OSPF External Type 2 metrics
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate metric-
type 1 ?
  <cr>
```

- 5) Configuration of default-information ROUTE MAP
 Enter the name of pointer to route-map entries.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate route-
map ?
  <WORD>          Pointer to route-map entries
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# default-information originate route-
map AA

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

Click a PROCESS ID that user wants to configure. The OSPF configuration window is shown below.

Use the value configured in ‘Configuration using CLI’ as a user-defined value in the below screen.

Default Information	
STATE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
ALWAYS	Enable
METRIC	1 20
METRIC-TYPE	2
ROUTE MAP ²	BB

3.4.5.3 Distance Configuration of General Settings

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Detail configuration of OSPF distance

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ?
      admin                OSPF Administrative distance
      ospf                  OSPF Distance
```

- 2) Distance admin configuration
Enter the OSPF Admin distance value.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ?
      admin                OSPF Administrative distance
      ospf                  OSPF Distance

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance admin ?
      1 - 255              OSPF Administrative distance

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance admin 100
```

The OSPF Admin distance is displayed as GENERAL in the Web UI.

- 3) Configuration of EXTERNAL distance ospf
Enter the OSPF EXTERNAL distance value.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf ?
      external            External routes
      inter-area          Inter-area routes
      intra-area          Intra-area routes
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf external ?
      1 - 255             <1-255> Distance for external/inter-
      area/intra-area routes
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf external 50
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
```

- 4) Configuration of INTER-AREA distance ospf
Enter the OSPF INTER-AREA distance value.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf inter-area ?
 1 - 255          <1-255> Distance for external/inter-
area/intra-area routes

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf inter-area 50 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf inter-area 50

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
```

- 5) Configuration of INTRA-AREA distance ospf
Enter the OSPF INTRA-AREA distance value.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf intra-area ?
 1 - 255          <1-255> Distance for external/inter-
area/intra-area routes

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf intra-area 50 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# distance ospf intra-area 50

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

Click a PROCESS ID that user wants to configure. The OSPF configuration window is shown below.

Use the value configured in 'Configuration using CLI' as a user-defined value in the below screen.

Distance	
GENERAL	<input type="text" value="0"/>
EXTERNAL	<input type="text" value="0"/>
INTER-AREA	<input type="text" value="0"/>
INTRA-AREA	<input type="text" value="0"/>

3.4.5.4 Overflow Configuration of General Settings

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Detail configuration of OSPF overflow

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow ?

    database                Database

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database ?
    external                External link states
    0 - 4294967294          Maximum number of LSAs

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database

```

- 2) Overflow external configuration

Enter the maximum number of LSAs and time to recover (0 not recover) value.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow ?

    database                Database

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database ?
    external                External link states
    0 - 4294967294          Maximum number of LSAs

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database external ?
    0 - 2147483647          Maximum number of LSAs

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database external 3 ?
    0 - 65535               Time to recover (0 not recover)

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database external 3 10 ?
    <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database external 3 10

```

- 3) Configuration of maximum number of LSAs

Enter the maximum number of LSAs and hard limit value.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow ?

    database                Database

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database ?
    external                External link states
    0 - 4294967294          Maximum number of LSAs

```

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database 100 ?
  hard                Hard limit; Instance will be shutdown if
exceed
  soft                Soft limit; Warning will be given if
exceed
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database 100 hard ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database 100 hard
    
```

Enter the maximum number of LSAs and soft limit value.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow ?

      database                Database

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database ?
  external                External link states
  0 - 4294967294          Maximum number of LSAs

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database 100 ?
  hard                Hard limit; Instance will be shutdown if
exceed
  soft                Soft limit; Warning will be given if
exceed
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database 100 soft ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# overflow database 100 soft
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

Click a PROCESS ID that user wants to configure. The OSPF configuration window is shown below.

Use the value configured in ‘Configuration using CLI’ as a user-defined value in the below screen.

Overflow	
MAX LSA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="text"/>
LIMIT TYPE	Disable <input type="text"/>
EXTERNAL MAX LSA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="text"/>
EXTERNAL TIME TO RECOVER	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="text"/>

3.4.5.5 Network Configuration

Configuration using CLI

Go to configure → ospf configuration mode of CLI.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# ?

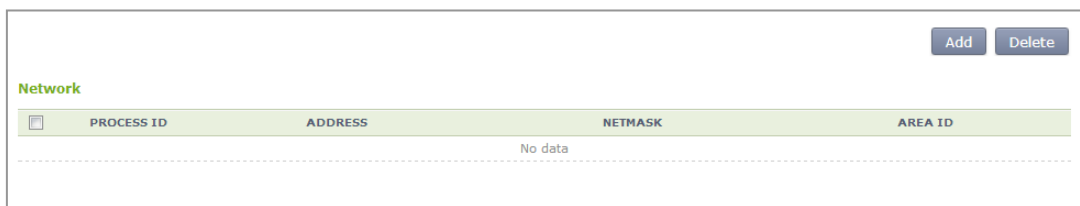
    area                OSPF area parameters
    auto-cost           Calculate OSPF interface cost according
to bandwidth
    capability          Enable specific OSPF feature
    compatible          OSPF compatibility list
    default-information Control distribution of default
information
    default-metric      Set metric of redistributed routes
    distance            Define an administrative distance
    distribute-list     Filter networks in routing updates
    exit               Exit from router mode
    host               OSPF stub host entry
    max-concurrent-dd   Maximum number allowed to process DD
concurrently
    maximum-area       Maximum number of ospf area
    neighbor           Specify a neighbor router
    network            Enable routing on an IP network
    ospf              OSPF specific commands
    overflow           Control overflow
    passive-interface  Suppress routing updates on an interface
    redistribute       Redistribute information from another
routing protocol
    router-id          Router-id for the OSPF process
    summary-address    Configure IP address summaries
    timers             Adjust routing timers

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network ?
    A.B.C.D            Network number
    A.B.C.D/M         OSPF network prefix
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Network> menu in the sub-menus.

The OSPF initial window is shown below.



3.4.5.6 Configuration of Network Details

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → ospf configuration mode of CLI.

```

WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# router ospf
WEC8500/configure# router ospf ?
  1 - 10                OSPF process ID
    
```

- 2) Network configuration
Configure the ADDRESS, NETMASK, and AREA ID of a user-defined network.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network ?
  A.B.C.D                Network number
  A.B.C.D/M              OSPF network prefix
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network 100.100.100.1 ?
  A.B.C.D                OSPF wild card bits(network mask)
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network 100.100.100.1 255.255.255.0 ?
  area                    Set the OSPF area ID

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network 100.100.100.1 255.255.255.0 ?
  area                    Set the OSPF area ID

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network 100.100.100.1 255.255.255.0
area ?
  0 - 4294967295         OSPF area ID as a decimal value
  A.B.C.D                OSPF area ID in IP address format
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network 100.100.100.1 255.255.255.0
area 3 ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# network 100.100.100.1 255.255.255.0
area 3
    
```

Parameter	Description
NETWORK ADDRESS	Network number OSPF network prefix
NETMASK	OSPF wild card bits (network mask)
AREA ID	OSPF area ID as a decimal value/ OSPF area ID in IP address format

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Network> menu in the sub-menus.

Enter the NETWORK ADDRESS, NETMASK, and AREA ID and click the <Apply> button.

Network	
PROCESS ID	2
NETWORK ADDRESS	10 . 10 . 10 . 1
NETMASK	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
AREA ID	10 . 10 . 10 . 0

3.4.5.7 Redistribute Configuration

Configuration using CLI

Go to configure → ospf configuration mode of CLI.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# ?
    area                OSPF area parameters
    auto-cost           Calculate OSPF interface cost according
to bandwidth
    capability          Enable specific OSPF feature
    compatible          OSPF compatibility list
    default-information Control distribution of default
information
    default-metric     Set metric of redistributed routes
    distance            Define an administrative distance
    distribute-list     Filter networks in routing updates
    exit               Exit from router mode
    host               OSPF stub host entry
    max-concurrent-dd  Maximum number allowed to process DD
concurrently
    maximum-area       Maximum number of ospf area
    neighbor           Specify a neighbor router
    network            Enable routing on an IP network
    ospf               OSPF specific commands
    overflow           Control overflow
    passive-interface  Suppress routing updates on an interface
    redistribute       Redistribute information from another
routing protocol
    router-id          Router-id for the OSPF process
    summary-address    Configure IP address summaries
    timers             Adjust routing timers
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute ?
    connected         Connected
    static            Static routes
    ospf              Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute

```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Redistribute> menu in the sub-menus.

The OSPF Redistribute initial window is shown below.

		Back Apply
PROCESS ID	1	
TYPE	Connected	

Configuration using CLI

1) Connected configuration

The metric, metric-type, route-map, tag detail setting and default setting can be configured.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute ?
  connected          Connected
  static             Static routes
  ospf               Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected ?

  metric             OSPF default metric
  metric-type        OSPF metric type for default routes
  route-map          Route map reference
  tag                Set tag for routes redistributed into
OSPF
```

2) Metric configuration

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected ?

  metric             OSPF default metric
  metric-type        OSPF metric type for default routes
  route-map          Route map reference
  tag                Set tag for routes redistributed into
OSPF
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected metric ?
  1 - 16777214      OSPF metric

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected metric 3 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected metric 3
```

Parameter	Description
metric	Enter a value from 1-16777214.

3) Metric-type configuration

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected metric-type ?
 1          Set OSPF External Type 1 metrics
 2          Set OSPF External Type 2 metrics
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected metric-type
1 ?
 <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected metric-type 1
    
```

Parameter	Description
metric-type	Select 1 or 2.

4) Route-map configuration

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected route-map ?
<WORD>          Pointer to route-map entries
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected route-map a ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected route-map a
    
```

Parameter	Description
route-map entries	Enter <WORD>.

5) Tag configuration

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected tag ?
0 - 4294967295          32-bit tag value

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected tag 3 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# redistribute connected tag 3
    
```

Parameter	Description
Tag value	Enter a tag value from 0-4294967295.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Redistribute> menu in the sub-menus.

The screenshot shows a configuration form with two main fields: 'PROCESS ID' and 'TYPE'. 'PROCESS ID' is a dropdown menu currently showing '1'. 'TYPE' is a dropdown menu currently showing 'Connected', with a list of other options including Static, OSPF 1 through OSPF 10. There are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons in the top right corner.

After configuring Redistribute default, select a PROCESS ID for detail configuration.

The screenshot shows a table titled 'Redistribute' with columns: PROCESS ID, TYPE, METRIC, METRIC TYPE, TAG, and ROUTE MAP. There are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons in the top right. A red '1' is located at the bottom center of the table area.

PROCESS ID	TYPE	METRIC	METRIC TYPE	TAG	ROUTE MAP
1	Connected	-	2	0	-
2	Connected	3	2	3	-

Configuring Redistribute details

Configure the details of metric, metric-type, route-map, or tag, etc. which is configured in CLI.

The screenshot shows a detailed configuration form for PROCESS ID 2. Fields include: 'TYPE' (Connected), 'METRIC' (3), 'METRIC TYPE' (2), 'TAG' (3), and 'ROUTE MAP' (blank). There are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons in the top right. A 'Foot Notes' section at the bottom explains the numbers 1 and 2.

Foot Notes :
 1. do not use
 2. If the value is blank, this is not used

3.4.5.8 AREA Configuration

The Area configuration includes Stub, Not So Stubby Areas (NSSA), Virtual-Link, Range, or Detail.

1) Stub configuration

Configuration using CLI

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 1 stub ?
no-summary          Do not inject inter-area routes into
stub
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 1 stub no-summary ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 1 stub no-summary
```

Parameter	Description
no-summary	Select Stub or No Summary.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Area> → <Stub> menu in the sub-menus.

In the Stub add page, configure the details and click the <Apply> button. Then, the initial window is changed as shown below.

PROCESS ID	AREA ID	STUB
1	10.10.10.1	Stub

2) NSSA configuration

Configuration using CLI

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 1 nssa ?

    default-information-originate Originate Type 7 default into NSSA
area
    no-redistribution              No redistribution into this NSSA area
    no-summary                    Do not send summary LSA into NSSA
    translator-role              NSSA-ABR Translator role

<cr>
    
```

default-information-originate configuration CLI of NSSA

The metric, metric-type, no-redistribution, no-summary, or translator-role details can be configured.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate ?

    metric                       OSPF default metric
    metric-type                  OSPF metric type for default routes
    no-redistribution            No redistribution into this NSSA area
    no-summary                  Do not send summary LSA into NSSA
    translator-role            NSSA-ABR Translator role

<cr>
    
```

Metric configuration of NSSA default-information-originate

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate metric ?
    0 - 16777214                OSPF metric

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate metric 3

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1#
    
```

Parameter	Description
OSPF metric	Enter a value from 0-16777214.

Metric-type configuration of NSSA default-information-originate

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate metric-type ?
  1 - 2                OSPF Link State type

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate metric-type 2

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1#

```

Parameter	Description
OSPF metric-type	Select 1 or 2.

Configuring no-redistribution of NSSA default-information-originate

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate ?
  metric                OSPF default metric
  metric-type           OSPF metric type for default routes
  no-redistribution     No redistribution into this NSSA area
  no-summary           Do not send summary LSA into NSSA
  translator-role      NSSA-ABR Translator role
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate no-redistribution ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate no-redistribution

```

Parameter	Description
no-redistribution	Enable/Disable Configuration

Configuring no-summary NSSA default-information-originate

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate no-summary ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate no-summary

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1#

```

Parameter	Description
no-summary	Enable/Disable Configuration

Configuring translator-role of NSSA default-information-originate

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate translator-role ?
  always          Translate always
  candidate       Candidate for translator (default)
  never          Do not translate
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate translator-role always ?
  no-redistribution  No redistribution into this NSSA area
  no-summary        Do not send summary LSA into NSSA
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate translator-role candidate ?
  no-redistribution  No redistribution into this NSSA area
  no-summary        Do not send summary LSA into NSSA
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate translator-role never ?
  no-redistribution  No redistribution into this NSSA area
  no-summary        Do not send summary LSA into NSSA
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 nssa default-information-
originate translator-role never

```

Parameter	Description
always	Translate always
candidate	Candidate for translator (default)
never	Do not translate

After the configuration of each parameter is finished, enable or disable the no-redistribution or no-summary parameter.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Area> → <NSSA> menu in the sub-menus.

The default window is shown below.

PROCESS ID	AREA ID
No data	

The default configuration screen is shown below.

PROCESS ID	1
AREA ID	100 . 10 . 10 . 1

The NSSA window screen is shown as below after detail configuration is completed.

PROCESS ID	AREA ID
1	100.10.10.1

If you select a Process ID after NSSA default configuration, operator can do detail configuration.

PROCESS ID	1
AREA ID	100.10.10.1
REDISTRIBUTION	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
SUMMARY	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
TRANSLATOR ROLE	Always
ORIGINATE STATE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
ORIGINATE METRIC	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1
ORIGINATE METRIC TYPE	2

Foot Notes :
1. do not use

3) Virtual-Link configuration

Configuration using CLI

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 ?
  authentication          Enable authentication
  default-cost            Set the summary-default cost of a NSSA
or stub area
  filter-list             Filter networks between OSPF areas
  nssa                   Specify a NSSA area
  range                  Summarize routes matching address/mask
(border routers only)
  shortcut               Configure the area's shortcutting mode
  stub                   Configure OSPF area as stub
  virtual-link           Define a virtual link and its parameters
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 virtual-link ?
  A.B.C.D                ID (IP addr) associated with virtual
link neighbor
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 1# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1 ?
  authentication          Enable authentication
  authentication-key      Set authentication key
  dead-interval           Dead router detection time
  hello-interval          Hello packet interval
  message-digest-key      Set message digest key
  retransmit-interval     LSA retransmit interval
  transmit-delay          LSA transmission delay
<cr>

```

To configure the Virtual-Link, enter an ID (router ID of OSPF that is connected via Virtual) and configure the detail items. The detail items include authentication, authentication-key, dead-interval, hello-interval, message-digest-key, retransmit-interval, or transmit-delay, etc.

Authentication configuration

Operator can configure authentication and message-digest.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
authentication ?
  message-digest          Use message-digest authentication
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
authentication message-digest ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
authentication message-digest

```

Authentication-key configuration

Enter 8-character word to be used as an authentication key. Use the entered 8-character as an authentication key.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
authentication-key ?
  <WORD>                               Authentication key (8 chars)
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
authentication-key aaaaaaaa

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#

```

Dead-interval configuration

The default value of dead-interval is 4 times of hello-interval. Because the default hello-interval is configured to 10 sec., the dead-interval will be 40 seconds if the hello-interval is not configured. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1 dead-
interval ?
  1 - 65535                               Seconds
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1 dead-
interval 50
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#

```

Hello-interval configuration

The default hello-interval is 10 seconds. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1 hello-
interval ?
  1 - 65535                               Seconds
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1 hello-
interval 50
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#

```

Message-digest-key configuration

The message-digest-key configures a key ID between 1 and 255. After key ID configuration, configure the authentication key by using the md5 algorithm. Operator can enter maximum 16 characters.

When you enter an authentication key, the message-digest-key configuration is completed.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
message-digest-key ?
  1 - 255                                   Key ID

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
message-digest-key 2 ?
  md5                                       Use MD5 algorithm

```

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
message-digest-key 2 md5 ?
  <WORD>                               Authentication key (16 chars)
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
message-digest-key 2 md5 b

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
    
```

Retransmit-interval configuration

The default retransmit-interval is 5 seconds. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
retransmit-interval ?
  1 - 65535                               Seconds (default: 5)

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
retransmit-interval
    
```

Transmit-delay configuration

The default transmit-delay is 1 second. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

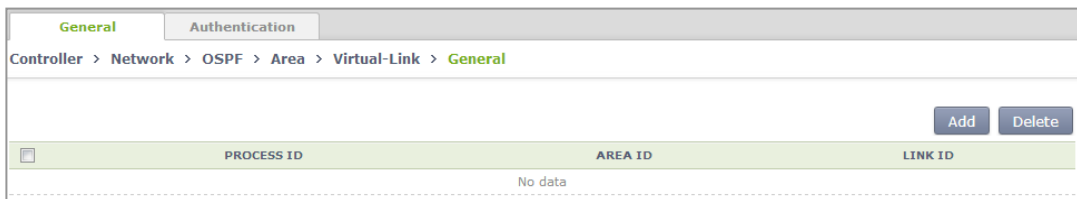
```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
transmit-delay ?
  1 - 65535                               Seconds
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 virtual-link 10.10.10.1
transmit-delay 5
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Area> → <Virtual-Link> menu in the sub-menus.

The default window is shown below.



Unlike other configurations, there are two tabs at the top; General page and Authentication page.

Start configuration in the General page for the basic configuration of Virtual-Link.

In the default configuration page, configure PROCESS ID, AREA ID, or LINK ID. For detail configuration, select a PROCESS ID you want. Operator can do detail configuration for an item you select.

	PROCESS ID	AREA ID	LINK ID
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	0.0.0.2	10.10.10.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	0.0.0.2	10.10.10.1

The detail configuration page is shown below.

Foot Notes :

1. If the value is blank, this is not used
2. use default value (hello interval * 4 second)
3. use default value (10 second)
4. use default value (5 second)
5. use default value (1 second)

The Authentication page of a Virtual-Link is shown below.

Click the **<Select Virtual-Link>** button.

Authentication Message Digest	
VIRTUAL-LINK	Select Virtual-Link
OSPF ID	1
AREA ID
VIRTUAL-LINK ID
DIGEST KEY	
DIGEST AUTHENTICATION	

Select a PROCESS ID that you have selected in the General page.

And then, configure Digest Key or Digest Authentication.

Just like CLI configuration, select a digest key between 1 and 255 and enter a key whose length is 16-character or less for digest authentication.

PROCESS ID	1
AREA ID
ADDRESS
PREFIX	
ADVERTISE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable

4) Range configuration

Configuration using CLI

To configure the Range detail items, start detail configuration after entering an Area range prefix value.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 range ?
  A.B.C.D/M                Area range prefix
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 range 10.10.10.1/16 ?
  advertise                Advertise this range (default)
  not-advertise            DoNotAdvertise this range
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 range 10.10.10.1/16
```

The detail items include advertise or no-advertise configuration
Configure whether to advertise to the range or not.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Area> → <Range> menu in the sub-menus.

The configuration page is as follows:

	PROCESS ID	AREA ID	ADDRESS	PREFIX	ADVERTISE
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	0.0.0.2	10.10.0.0	16	Disable
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	10.10.0.1	64.0.0.0	2	Enable

1

5) Detail configuration

Configuration using CLI

This is additional explanations for Area. Operator can configure authentication, default-cost, or shortcut.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 ?
  authentication      Enable authentication
  default-cost        Set the summary-default cost of a NSSA
or stub area
  filter-list         Filter networks between OSPF areas
  nssa                Specify a NSSA area
  range               Summarize routes matching address/mask
(border routers only)
  shortcut            Configure the area's shortcutting mode
  stub                Configure OSPF area as stub
  virtual-link        Define a virtual link and its parameters
```

Authentication configuration

Operator can select whether to use authentication or message-digest function.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 authentication ?
  message-digest      Use message-digest authentication
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 authentication message-
digest ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 2 authentication message-digest
```

Default-cost configuration

Configure a value between 0 and 1677215 as a default-cost. However, operator can configure the default-cost value in AREA ID whether a stub or NSSA is configured. If you try to configure the default-cost in an ID where neither the two items are configured, the following error phrase is displayed.
 ‘% The area is neither stub, nor NSSA’

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 0.0.0.1 default-cost ?
  0 - 16777215          Stub's advertised default summary cost
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 0.0.0.1 default-cost 3 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 0.0.0.1 default-cost 3
```

Shortcut configuration

For Shortcut configuration, operator can select one out of 3 selections including default, disable, and enable.

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 0.0.0.1 shortcut ?
  default          Set default shortcutting behavior
  disable          Disable shortcutting through the area
  enable           Enable shortcutting through the area
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# area 0.0.0.1 shortcut enable

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Area> → <Detail> menu in the sub-menus.

The configuration page is as follows:

	PROCESS ID	AREA ID	AUTHENTICATION	DEFAULT COST	SHORT CUT
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	0.0.0.0	Disable	-	Default
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	0.0.0.2	Disable	-	Default
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	10.10.0.1	Disable	-	Default
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	10.10.10.1	Disable	1	Default
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	100.10.10.1	Disable	1	Default
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	0.0.0.0	Disable	-	Default
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	0.0.0.1	Disable	3	Enable

Select a PROCESS ID for detail configuration. As mentioned in the CLI, the Stub or NSSA must be configured to the PROCESS ID in a window where default-cost is selected. If a PROCESS ID without the configuration is completed, the detail configuration can not be performed. Therefore, the below default-cost configuration is available only when the Stub or NSSA is configured to the ID.

<input type="button" value="Back"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/>	
PROCESS ID	2
AREA ID	0.0.0.1
AUTHENTICATION	Disable <input type="button" value="v"/>
SHORT CUT	Enable <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>	
DEFAULT COST	<input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="text" value=""/>

3.4.5.9 Summary Configuration

Configuration using CLI

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# summary-address ?
  A.B.C.D/M          IP summary prefix
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# summary-address 1.1.1.1/16 ?
  not-advertise      Suppress routes that match the prefix
  tag                Set tag

<cr>
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# summary-address 1.1.1.1/16

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2#
    
```

Parameter	Description
summary-address	A.B.C.D/M

Operator can perform detail configuration only when you enter a summary-address. The detail configuration includes advertise or TAG configuration.

- 1) Advertise Configuration
The default is set to Enable. Therefore, if no-advertise is selected in the CLI, the configuration is changed to Disable.
- 2) Tag
A tag is a user-defined 32-bit tag value between 0 and 4294967295. A tag also has a default value and it is 0.

```

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# summary-address 11.1.1.1/16

WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# summary-address 11.1.1.1/16 tag ?
  0 - 4294967295      32-bit tag value
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# summary-address 11.1.1.1/16 tag 3
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Summary> menu in the sub-menus.

The configuration page is as follows:

Summary					
PROCESS ID	ADDRESS	PREFIX	ADVERTISE	TAG	
2	1.1.0.0	16	Enable	0	
2	11.1.0.0	16	Enable	3	

After default configuration, select a PROCESS ID for detail configuration. The detail configuration includes advertise and TAG configuration mentioned in the CLI. Unlike CLI, there is no no-advertise. A user can change the default Enable to Disable.

PROCESS ID	2
ADDRESS	11.1.0.0
PREFIX	16
ADVERTISE	Enable
TAG	3

3.4.5.10 Passive Interface Configuration

Configuration using CLI

```
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# passive-interface ?
<WORD> Interface's name
WEC8500/configure/router/ospf 2# passive-interface ge2 ?
A.B.C.D Address of interface
<cr>
```

Parameter	Description
Interface Name	Enter the name of an interface to use directly.

A user directly enters an interface name for Passive-interface configuration. Also, a user can enter an address to the interface.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Passive Interface> menu in the sub-menus.

The configuration page is as follows:

After selecting a PROCESS ID that a user will use, select an interface to apply.

NAME
ge1
ge2
ge3
ge4
ge5
ge6
ge7
ge8
xe1
xe2
mgmt0
lo
vlan1.1
vlan1.2

Among the interface items displayed on the screen, configure the interface that a user wants.

3.4.5.11 Interface General Configuration

Configuration using CLI

Unlike other OSPF configurations, the interface general does not enter into the OSPF mode. Perform related configuration at the interface that a user wants. Therefore, the CLI configuration is as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → interface configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
WEC8500/configure# interface ge2
```

- 2) The items for detail configuration are as follows:

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf ?
  address                Address of interface
  authentication         Enable authentication
  authentication-key     Authentication password (key)
  cost                   Interface cost
  database-filter        Filter OSPF LSA during synchronization
and flooding
  dead-interval          Interval after which a neighbor is
declared dead
  disable                Disable OSPF
  hello-interval         Time between HELLO packets
  message-digest-key     Message digest authentication password
(key)
  mtu                    OSPF interface MTU
  mtu-ignore             Time between HELLO packets
  network                Network type
  priority                Router priority
  retransmit-interval    Time between retransmitting lost link
state advertisements
  transmit-delay         Link state transmit delay

```

DISABLE OSPF configuration

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf disable ?
  all                    All functionality
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf disable all ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf disable all

```

MTU configuration

The default does not use Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) configuration.
The range of MTU user configuration is 576-65535.

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf mtu ?
  576 - 65535
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf mtu 600
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2#

```

Network Type configuration

The network type includes 4 types, i.e. broadcast, non-broadcast, point-to-point, and point-to-multipoint. The Ethernet is broadcast configuration.

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf network ?
  broadcast              Specify OSPF broadcast multi-access
network
  non-broadcast          Specify OSPF NBMA network

```

```

point-to-point          Specify OSPF point-to-point network
point-to-multipoint    Specify OSPF point-to-multipoint network
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf network

```

Authentication configuration

This is CLI that selects whether to use user authentication.

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf authentication ?
  message-digest      Use message-digest authentication
  null                Use null authentication
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf authentication message-
digest ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf authentication null ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf authentication null

```

OSPF Cost configuration

Enter a cost value between 1 and 65535.

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf cost ?
  1 - 65535          Cost
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf cost 2 ?
  <cr>

```

DATABASE-FILTER configuration

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf database-filter ?
  all                Filter all LSA
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf database-filter all ?
  out                Outgoing LSA
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf database-filter all out ?
  <cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf database-filter all out

```

Dead-interval configuration

The default value of dead-interval is 4 times of hello-interval. Because the default hello-interval is configured to 10 sec., the dead-interval will be 40 seconds if the hello-interval is not configured. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

```

WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf dead-interval ?
  1 - 65535          Seconds

```

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf dead-interval 30 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf dead-interval 30
```

Hello-interval configuration

The default hello-interval is 10 seconds. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf hello-interval ?
 1 - 65535                Seconds
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf hello-interval 50 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf hello-interval 50
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2#
```

Retransmit-interval configuration

The default retransmit-interval is 5 seconds. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf retransmit-interval ?
 1 - 65535                Seconds (default: 5)
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf retransmit-interval 100 ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf retransmit-interval 100
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2#
```

TRANSMIT DELAY configuration

The default transmit-delay is 1 second. In addition, operator can change it to a value between 1 second and 65535 seconds.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf transmit-delay ?
 1 - 65535                Seconds
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf transmit-delay 400
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2#
```

MTU IGNORE configuration

The default configuration is Disable. If you configure CLI, it is changed to Enable.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf mtu-ignore ?
<cr>
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf mtu-ignore
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2#
```

PRIORITY configuration

The default OSPF Priority value is 1. A user can configure the priority between 1 and 255.

```
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf priority ?
  0 - 255                Priority
WEC8500/configure/interface ge2# ip ospf priority 2
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <OSPF> → <Interface General> menu in the sub-menus.

The configuration page is as follows:

As shown in the below figure, the currently enabled interface items are displayed.

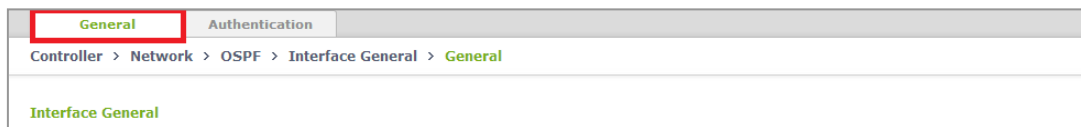
When you select an interface for detail configuration, operator can go to the detail item configuration page.

The Interface General item is also divided into General configuration and Authentication window as a tab.

Interface General	
INTERFACE	AUTHENTICATION
ge1	Disable
ge2	Authentication Null
ge3	Disable
ge4	Disable
ge5	Disable
ge6	Disable
ge7	Disable
ge8	Disable
xe1	Disable
xe2	Disable
mgmt0	-
lo	-
vlan1.1	-
vlan1.2	Disable

1

The General configuration screen is as follows:



The detail item configuration page is as follows:

When you select the name of an enabled interface, the below detail item configuration page is displayed.

		Back Apply
INTERFACE NAME	ge2	
DISABLE OSPF	Enable	
MTU	1 600	
NETWORK TYPE	Broadcast	
AUTHENTICATION	Authentication Null	
AUTHENTICATION KEY ²	12345678	
COST	0	
DATABASE FILTER	Disable	
DEAD INTERVAL	3 30	
HELLO INTERVAL	4 50	
RETRANSMIT INTERVAL	5 100	
TRANSMIT DELAY	6 400	
MTU IGNORE	Enable	
PRIORITY	7 2	

After entering a value that a user wants for the item configured in the above CLI, click the <Apply> button.

Authentication configuration

Just as General configuration, click the Authentication configuration in the tab.

Then, the page for authentication related detail configuration is displayed as shown below.

Select an interface that a user wants to configure, and enter the key string (1-255) of the configuration.

General		Authentication
Controller > Network > OSPF > Interface General > Authentication > Add		
		Back Apply
Authentication Message Digest		
INTERFACE NAME	Select Interface	
KEY		
KEY STRING		

The verification page after configuration is as follows:

		Add Delete	
Authentication Message Digest			
<input type="checkbox"/>	INTERFACE NAME	KEY	KEY STRING
<input type="checkbox"/>	ge2	2	1234
1			

3.4.6 VRRP Configuration

The Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is an Internet protocol that provides the backup router operation method in a LAN. If a fault occurs with a router that transmits a packet from a host in a LAN, decide a virtual IP address in a DHCP manually or by default by using a virtual router fault recovery protocol and share it among routers. Once a primary router and a backup router are decided, the backup router becomes a primary router when a fault occurs with the primary router.

Configuration using CLI

To configure the VRRP related function, go to configure → router mode of CLI, enter a router ID and interface name to go to the VRRP configuration mode.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# router
WEC8500/configure# router vrrp
WEC8500/configure# router vrrp 1 vlan1.10
WEC8500/configure/router/vrrp#
```

The following commands are provided.

[advertisement-interval]

This command configures the advertisement interval of VRRP in second. A user can configure the interval from 1 to 10.

- advertisement-interval [INTERVAL]

Parameter	Description
INTERVAL	Advertisement interval (range: 1-10 s)

[circuit-failover]

Enter an interface to configure and its priority.

- circuit-failover [WORD] [PRIORITY]

Parameter	Description
WORD	Interface name
PRIORITY	Priority setup (range: 1-100)

[enable/disable]

This command enables or disables the VRRP session.

- enable
- disable

[preempt-delay]

This command configures the preempt delay time.

- preempt-delay [DELAY_TIME]

Parameter	Description
DELAY_TIME	Preempt delay time (range: 0-3600 s)

[preempt-mode]

This command configures whether to use the preempt mode.

- preempt-mode [MODE]

Parameter	Description
MODE	- true: Use the preempt mode - false: Stop using the preempt mode.

[priority]

This command configures a priority.

- priority [PRIORITY]

Parameter	Description
PRIORITY	Priority setup (range: 1-255)

[virtual-ip]

This command configures an IP address to use in the VRRP and configure the IP address as master or backup.

- virtual-ip [A.B.C.D]
- virtual-ip [A.B.C.D] [MODE]

Parameter	Description
A.B.C.D	IP address
MODE	IP configuration mode (backup/master) - backup: Backup router configuration. - master: Master configuration.

[show vrrp]

This command retrieves VRRP configuration.

- show vrrp

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <VRRP> menu in the sub-menus.

The VRRP menu provides two sub menus, i.e. Operation and Circuit Failover.

[Operation]

When you click the <Enable>/<Disable> button, you can Enable or disable VRRP.

In addition, when you click the <Add> or <Delete> button, you can add or delete VRRP configuration.



Figure 33. VRRP-Operation Window

[Circuit Failover]

When you click the Circuit Failover menu, the VRRP list is displayed on the window.

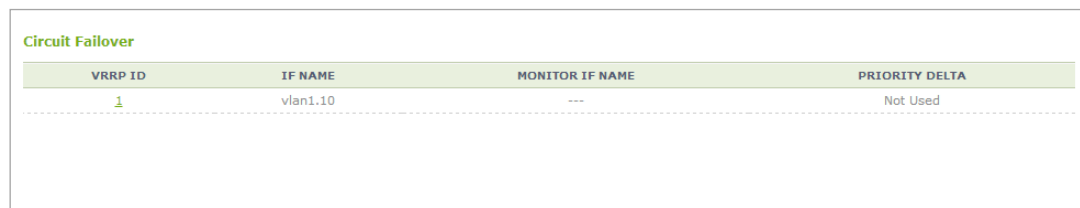


Figure 34. VRRP-Circuit Failover Window (1)

To perform detail configuration, select one of VRRP items.

After selecting a configuration you want select the <Apply> button to apply the configuration.



Figure 35. VRRP-Circuit Failover Window (2)

3.4.7 Configuring IPWATCHD

The IP WATCH Daemon (IPWATCHD) provides the function of detecting active or passive IP collision. Regardless of IP collision attacker or victim, the information including source ip/mac is transmitted as an evm fault event when the IP collision occurs. At the collision time, the Gratuitous Address Resolution Protocol (GARP) reply is transmitted 3 times to the unicast at every 1 second.

It supports the rate-limit function to deal with an intended ARP attack. Although ARP is entered from a host that is not in the same subnet, it generates GARP by recognizing it as a target if the host has the same APC IP.

Configuration using CLI

To configure the IPWATCHD function, enter into the configure mode of CLI.

Configure a TIMEOUT value (that a user wants) to detect an IP address collision.

Operator can enter a value between 10 and 300 seconds.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
WEC8500/configure# ipwatch ?
    defend-interval      Ipwatch defend-interval configuration
WEC8500/configure# ipwatch defend-interval ?
    10 - 300             Ipwatch defend-interval value(seconds)
WEC8500/configure# ipwatch defend-interval 30
```

Parameter	Description
VALUE	Enter a defend-interval (10-300 sec).

The default TIMEOUT value for IP address collision detection is 30 seconds.

When the time is configured, the IPWATCHD daemon is restarted and a log and GARP is generated if there is an IP collision.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Network> → <ARP> menu in the sub-menus.

After entering a time value (10-300 seconds) that a user wants in the TIMEOUT FOR IP ADDRESS CONFLICT DETECTION window, click the <Apply> button. Then, the configuration is applied.

The default value before user configuration is 30 as shown in the below figure.

The screenshot shows a configuration window with an 'Apply' button in the top right. It contains three rows of configuration options:

- ARP CACHE CLEAR: Not Clear (dropdown)
- ARP CONF WLAN ARP SERVICE MODE: Suppression (dropdown)
- TIMEOUT FOR IP ADDRESS CONFLICT DETECTION: 30 (input field) with a range of 10~300 (dropdown) indicated next to it.

The 'TIMEOUT FOR IP ADDRESS CONFLICT DETECTION' row is highlighted with a red border.

Figure 36. IPWATCHD Configuration Window

3.5 QoS

The Access Control List (ACL) allows or blocks a specific network traffic based on an operator's configuration. The APC provides QoS using ACL.

3.5.1 ACL Configuration

3.5.1.1 Access List Configuration

You can create or delete an access list for ACL configuration. To delete an access list, an operator can enter the name of an access list directly or enter a command by copying a value retrieved from the 'show running-config network'. But, if the access list is being used in the WLAN ACL or Admin ACL, etc., you cannot delete it. Therefore, check if it is being used in the WLAN ACL or Admin ACL first of all.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to fqm mode where you can configure the configure → rule of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
```

- 2) Create an access list by entering the 'access-list' command. The 'no' parameter is used to delete an access list.
 - access-list [ip/ipv6/mac] [ACL_NAME] [deny/permit/time-profile] seq [seq_NUM] [1/*/ahp/eigrp/esp/gre/icmp/igmp/igrp/ip/nos/ospf/pcp/pim/17/6/tcp/udp/1-255] [any/A.B.C.D A.B.C.D] eq [eq_VALUE] [any/A.B.C.D A.B.C.D] eq [eq_VALUE] [[[dscp [*][0-63]]precedence [*][0-7]]]]]

An example of entering a command is shown below.

- Creating Access list 'acl1':

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
APC/configure# access-list ip acl1 permit seq 1 icmp any any
```

- Deleting Access list 'acl1':

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
APC/configure# no access-list ip acl1 permit seq 1 icmp any any
```

- 3) Check a created access list using the 'show running-config network' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Security> → <Access Control Lists> → <IP ACL> menu in the sub-menus.

The initial window of ACL rule configuration is shown below. When you click the <Add> or <Delete> button, you can add or delete ACL rule.

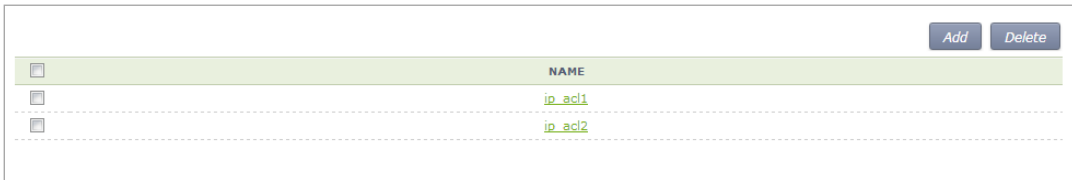


Figure 37. ACL Configuration Window

To change the configuration of ACL rule, click ACL NAME to change. You can change the configuration using the <Add> or <Delete> button. In addition, if there is a time profile in an ACL name, the IP ALC window is changed as shown below. After selecting a time profile, click the <Apply> button to apply the time profile to the ACL.

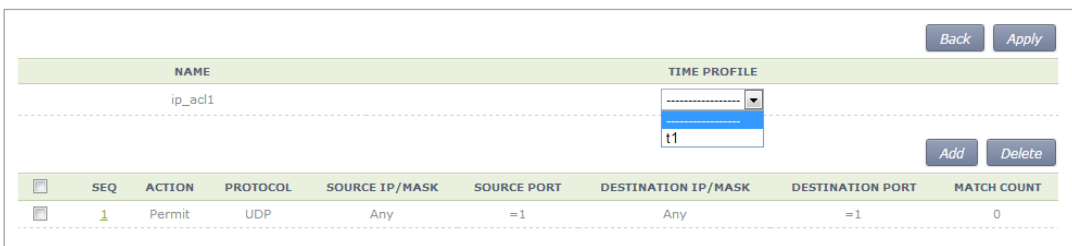


Figure 38. Window where a Time Profile is Applied to ACL

3.5.1.2 ACL Rule Configuration

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to interface configuration mode where you will apply the configure → ACL rule of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# interface [name]
APC/configure/interface [name]#
```

- 2) Configure ACL to an interface.
 - ip access-group [MODE] [DIRECTION] [ACL_NAME]

Parameter	Description
MODE	Configuration mode (fw/fqm)
DIRECTION	Application direction configuration (in/out)

Parameter	Description
ACL_NAME	ACL name to configure

An example of entering a command that configures ‘acl1’ to the ‘ge2’ interface is shown below.

```

APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# interface ge2
APC/configure/interface ge2#ip access-group fgm in acl1
    
```

- 3) To check the configuration information, use the ‘show running-config network’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Security> → <Access Control Lists> → <Access Group (Interface)> menu in the sub-menus.

The initial window of WLAN ACL configuration is shown below. When you click the <Add> or <Delete> button, you can add or delete ACL rule.



Figure 39. ACL Interface Configuration Window (1)

To perform detail configuration, select an interface in the list.

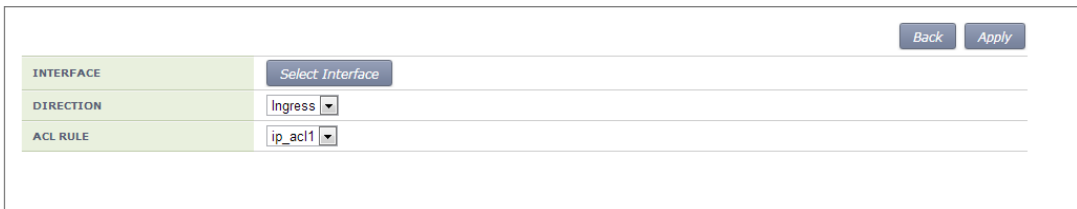


Figure 40. ACL Interface Configuration Window (2)

The types of interfaces you can configure are retrieved. In the INTERFACE, select an interface. For DIRECTION, select Ingress or Egress. For ACL NAME, select an item (name) that is configured in the ACL List configuration.

To apply the changed configuration, click the <Apply> button.

3.5.1.3 WLAN ACL Configuration

- 1) Go to the fqm mode to configure the configure → ACL rule of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
```

- 2) Configure WLAN ACL by entering the 'ip access-group wireless' command.
 - ip access-group wireless [ACL_NAME]

Parameter	Description
ACL_NAME	ACL name to configure

- 3) To check the configuration information, use the 'show running-config network' command.

3.5.1.4 Admin ACL Configuring

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to the fqm mode to configure the configure → ACL rule of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
```

- 2) Configure Admin ACL by entering the 'ip access-group wireless' command.
 - ip access-group system [ACL_NAME]

Parameter	Description
ACL_NAME	ACL name to configure

- 3) To check the configuration information, use the 'show running-config network' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Security> → <Access Control Lists> → <Access Group (System)> menu in the sub-menus.

The initial window of Access Group is shown below. After selecting a configuration, click the <Apply> button to configure Admin ACL.

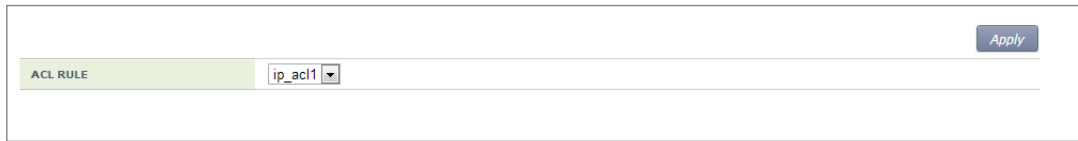


Figure 41. Admin ACL Configuration Window

3.5.2 Class-map Configuration

- 1) Go to the fqm mode to configure the configure → ACL rule of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
```

- 2) Go to Class-map mode.
 - class-map c1
- 3) Select match-all or match-any.
 - match-type [MODE]

Parameter	Description
MODE	Match mode configuration (match-all/match-any)

- 4) Perform detail configuration according to match criteria.

Match Criteria	Description
access-group	match access-group [ACCESS_GROUP_NAME]
class	match class [CLASS_NAME]
COS	match cos [COS_VALUE/any]
destination IP range	match dst ip range [A.B.C.D] [A.B.C.D]
IP	match ip dscp [DSCP_VALUE/any] match ip precedence [IP_PRECEDENCE_VALUE/any] match ip tos [TOS_VALUE/any]
protocol	match protocol [PROTOCOL_VALE/any]
source IP range	match src ip range [A.B.C.D] [A.B.C.D]

- 5) Exit the Class-map mode.
 - exit
- 6) To check the configuration information, use the ‘show running-config network’ command.

3.5.3 Policy-map Configuration

- 1) Go to the fqm mode to configure the configure → ACL rule of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
```

- 2) Go to policy-map mode. To delete a policy map, enter 'no' parameter in front of the command.
 - policy-map [POLICY_MAP_NAME]
 - no policy-map [POLICY_MAP_NAME]
- 3) By using the class name configured in the class-map, go to the input mode.
 - class [CLASSMAP_NAME]
- 4) Configure a policy-map using the following command.

[Bandwidth to a class of traffic]

- bandwidth percentage [PERCENTAGE_VALUE]

[Configure set action]

- mark cos [COS_VALUE]
- mark ip dscp [DSCP_VALUE]
- mark ip precedence [PRECEDENCE_VALUE]
- mark priority [PRIORITY_VALUE]

[Configure police action]

- police trtcm cir [1-1000] cbs [125000-125000000] pir [1-1000] pbs [125000-125000000] conform-action(drop|(dscp [0-63]|ip [0-7])|transmit) exceed-action(drop|(dscp [0-63]|ip [0-7])|transmit) violate-action(drop|(dscp [0-63]|ip [0-7])|transmit)(color-aware|color-blind)

[Peak rate to a class of traffic]

- queue-limit [QUEUE_NUM]

[Peak rate to a class of traffic]

- shape-peak [PEAK_RATE]

- 5) Exit the policy-map mode.
 - exit
- 6) To check the configuration information, use the 'show running-config network' command.

3.5.4 Service Policy Configuration

Apply the policy configured in the policy-map to an interface.

- 1) Go to configure → interface configuring mode to apply the service policy of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# interface ge2
APC/configure/interface ge2#
```

- 2) Apply the policy configured in the policy-map to an interface. The ‘no’ parameter is used to delete the policy.
 - service-policy [DIRECTION] [POLICY_NAME]
 - no service-policy [DIRECTION] [POLICY_NAME]

Parameter	Description
DIRECTION	Application direction configuration (in/out)
POLICY_NAME	Policy to apply

An example of entering a command is shown below.

```
APC/configure/interface ge2# service-policy in p1
APC/configure/interface ge2# no service-policy in p1
```

- 3) To check the configuration information, use the ‘show running-config network’ command.

3.5.5 Time Profile

The procedure of configuring a time profile and applying it to ACL is described.

3.5.5.1 Time Profile Configuration

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure of CLI → fqm mode.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
```

- 2) Configure a time profile. The ‘no’ parameter is used to delete a time profile.

- time-profile [PROFILE_NAME]
 - day-start (any|YY[-MM[-DD[THH[:MM[:SS]]]]])
 - day-stop (any|YY[-MM[-DD[THH[:MM[:SS]]]]])
 - time-start (any|HH:MM[:SS])
 - time-stop (any|HH:[MM:SS])
 - monthdays (any|[0-31])
 - weekdays (any|VARIABLE))
- no time-profile [PROFILE_NAME]

Parameter	Description
PROFILE_NAME	Name of a time profile to configure

- 3) To check the configured time profile, use the ‘show running-config network’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Security> → <Access Control Lists> → <Time Profile> menu in the sub-menus.

The configured time profile list is displayed on the window. When you click the <Add> or <Delete> button, you can add or delete a time profile.

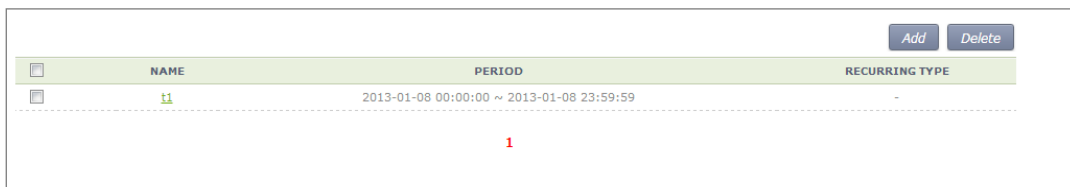


Figure 42. Time Profile Configuration Window (1)

Select an item in the list and perform detail configuration.

NAME	t1		
TYPE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Absolute <input type="radio"/> Periodic		
DATE START	2013-01-08	00	00
DATE END	2013-01-08	23	59

Figure 43. Time Profile Configuration Window (2)

After finishing configuration in the window, click the <Apply> button to apply it to the system.

3.5.5.2 Applying to ACL

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to the fqm mode to configure the configure → ACL rule of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
```

- 2) Apply a time-profile to ACL. The 'no' parameter is used to delete a time profile.
 - access-list ip [ACL_NAME] time-profile [PROFILE_NAME]
 - no access-list ip [ACL_NAME] time-profile [PROFILE_NAME]

Parameter	Description
ACL_NAME	ACL name to configure
PROFILE_NAME	Name of a time profile to configure

An example of applying 't1' to 'acl' is shown below.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
access-list ip acl1 time-profile t1
```

- 3) To check the configuration information, use the 'show running-config network' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Security> → <Access Control Lists> → <IP ACL> menu in the sub-menus.

To change the configuration of ACL rule, click ACLNAME to change. You can change the configuration using the <Add> or <Delete> button. In addition, if there is a time profile in an ACL name, the IP ACL window is changed as shown below. After selecting a time profile, click the <Apply> button to apply the time profile to the ACL.

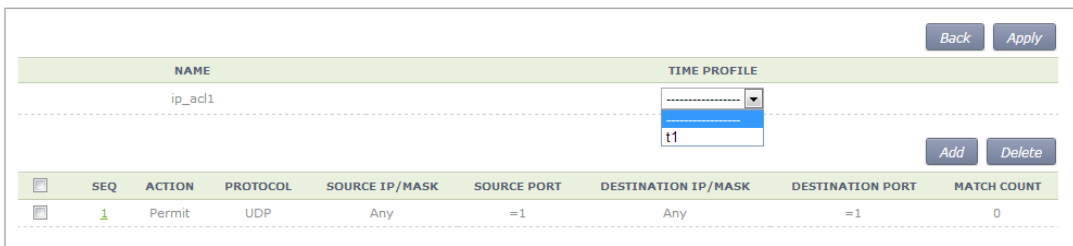


Figure 44. Applying to ACL

3.5.5.3 ACL (Time-Profile) Rule Configuration

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → interface configuration mode of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# interface ge2
```

- 2) Configure ACL to the interface. The 'no' parameter is used to delete ACL.
 - ip access-group [MODE] [DIRECTION] [ACL_NAME]
 - no ip access-group [fw/fqm] [DIRECTION] [ACL_NAME]

Parameter	Description
MODE	Configuration mode (fw/fqm) For ACL rule configuration, select 'fqm' (The 'fw' is used for firewall configuration.)
DIRECTION	Application direction configuration (in/out)
ACL_NAME	ACL name to configure

- 3) To check the configuration information, use the 'show running-config network' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Security> → <Access Control Lists> → <Access Group (Interface)> menu in the sub-menus.

Perform configuration by referring to 'ACL Rule Configuration'.

3.5.6 OS-AWARE

OS-AWARE is a function to use the option value of the DHCP Discover/Request transmitted from a station to check the type of the operating system used by the station.

The procedures to set OS-AWARE and apply the OS-AWARE settings to ACL are described below.

3.5.6.1 OS-AWARE Configuration

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → os-aware mode of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# os-aware
APC/configure/os-aware # ?

      delete                Os-aware delete operation
      exit                  Exit from os-aware mode
      os-aware              Os-aware add operation
      update                Os-aware update
```

- 2) Set the OS-AWARE. Use the 'delete' parameter to delete the OS-AWARE.
 - os-aware [OS_AWARE NAME] dhcp-option [OPTION_NUM] dhcp-option [OPTION_NUM] eq[VALUE] os-type [OS_TYPE NAME]
 - delete os-aware [OS_AWARE NAME]
 - update os-aware [OS_AWARE NAME] dhcp-option [OPTION_NUM] dhcp-option [OPTION_NUM] eq [VALUE] os-type [OS_TYPE NAME]

Parameter	Description
OS_AWARE NAME	os-aware name to configure
SEQUENCE_NUM	Fingerprint pattern match sequence(1~255)
OPTION_NUM	dhcp option value (1~255)
VALUE	Fingerprint value(HEX)
OS_TYPE NAME	os-type name to configure(Unknown, android, ios, windows, mac)

os-aware 'window7' creation:

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# os-aware
APC/configure/os-aware # os-aware window7 seq 5 dhcp-option 1 eq AA
os-type windows
```

os-aware 'window7' modification:

```

APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# os-aware
APC/configure/os-aware # os-aware window7 seq 8 dhcp-option 2 eq FF
os-type windows
    
```

os-aware 'window7' deletion:

```

APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# os-aware
APC/configure/os-aware # no os-aware window7
    
```

- 3) Check the settings by using the 'show OS-AWARE-all' or 'show OS-AWARE-[OS_AWARE NAME]' commands.
 'show OS-AWARE-all' retrieves all OS-AWARE information and 'show OS-AWARE-[OS_AWARE NAME]' only retrieves user defined information out of all OS-AWARE information.

```

=====
=====
PLD_INDEX  OS_NAME  TYPE  REFCNT  OPTION  LENGTH  FINGERPRINT
OS_TYPE
=====
=====
          1      window7  0      0        5        2      1234 windows
    
```

3.5.6.2 Applying to ACL

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → fqm mode to set the ACL rule of CLI.

```

APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
    
```

- 2) Apply the OS-AWARE to ACL. Use the 'no' parameter to delete the OS-AWARE
 - access-list [ip/ipv6/mac] [ACL_NAME] [deny/permit/time-profile] seq [seq_NUM] [1/*/ahp/eigrp/esp/gre/icmp/igmp/igrp/ip/nos/ospf/pcp/pim/17/6/tcp/udp/1-255] [any/A.B.C.D A.B.C.D] eq [eq_VALUE] [any/A.B.C.D A.B.C.D] eq [eq_VALUE] os-aware[OS_AWARE NAME] [[[dscp [*[[0-63]]]precedence [*[[0-7]]]]]]
 - no access-list [ip/ipv6/mac] [ACL_NAME] [deny/permit/time-profile] seq [seq_NUM] [1/*/ahp/eigrp/esp/gre/icmp/igmp/igrp/ip/nos/ospf/pcp/pim/17/6/tcp/udp/1-255] [any/A.B.C.D A.B.C.D] eq [eq_VALUE] [any/A.B.C.D A.B.C.D] eq [eq_VALUE] os-aware[OS_AWARE NAME] [[[dscp [*[[0-63]]]precedence [*[[0-7]]]]]]

Parameter	Description
OS_AWARE NAME	os-aware name to configure

An example of applying 'window7' to 'acl' is as follows.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# fqm-mode
access-list ip acl1 permit seq 1 icmp any any os-aware window7
```

- 3) To check the configuration information, use the 'show running-config network' command.

3.6 Multicast to Unicast

Execute the 'show multi2uni-list' command to check the list of wireless terminals that use the multicast to unicast function.

3.7 IP Multicast Configuration

3.7.1 IP Multicast Routing Configuration

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

- 2) Enable or disable the routing function for IP multicast.

- ip multicast-routing: Enable
- no ip multicast-routing: Disable

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Multicast> → <IP Multicast> menu in the sub-menus.

After selecting Enable/Disable in the IP Multicast window, click the <Apply> button to apply the configuration.



Figure 45. IP Multicast Configuration Window

3.7.2 PIM Configuration

As a multicast layer3 transmission protocol, the PIM has two modes, i.e. Dense mode and Sparse mode. The WEC8500 supports only PIM Sparse mode and the PIM Sparse mode can be configured for each interface.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure of CLI → mode where you want to perform configuration.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface ge2
```

- 2) Perform PIM configuration.
 - ip pim sparse-mode: Enable
 - no ip pim sparse-mode: Disable

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Multicast> → <PIM-SM> menu in the sub-menus. When you click the <Add> or <Delete> button, you can add or delete PIM-SM configuration.

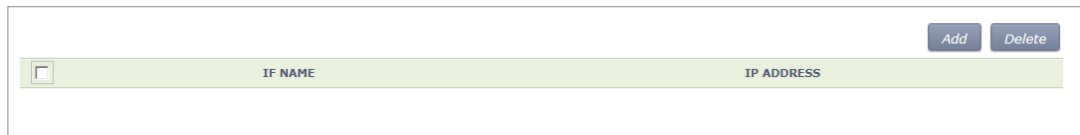


Figure 46. PIM-SM Configuration Window (1)

Follow the below procedure to add a PIM.

- 1) In the PIM-SM initial window, click the <Add> button.
- 2) Click the <Select Interface> button.



Figure 47. PIM-SM Configuration Window (2)

3) Select an interface to add.

Back

Select Interface

NAME	TYPE	MAC ADDRESS	IP ADDRESS	ADMIN STATUS	LINK STATUS
ge1	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:08	0.0.0.0	up	down
ge2	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:0a	0.0.0.0	up	down
ge3	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:04	0.0.0.0	up	down
ge4	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:06	0.0.0.0	up	down
ge5	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:0b	0.0.0.0	up	down
ge6	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:09	0.0.0.0	up	down
ge7	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:07	0.0.0.0	up	down
ge8	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:05	0.0.0.0	up	down
xe1	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:03	0.0.0.0	up	down
xe2	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:02	0.0.0.0	up	down
mgmt0	gigabit ethernet	00:7e:37:00:1f:00	192.168.5.132	up	up
lo	loopback	00:00:00:00:00:00	127.0.0.1	up	up
vlan1.1	vlan device	00:7e:37:00:1f:01	0.0.0.0	up	down
vlan1.10	vlan device	00:7e:37:00:1f:01	10.10.10.3	up	down
vlan1.100	vlan device	00:7e:37:00:1f:01	0.0.0.0	up	down

1

Figure 48. PIM-SM Configuration Window (3)

4) The selected interface is displayed on the window. Click the <Apply> button to apply the configuration.

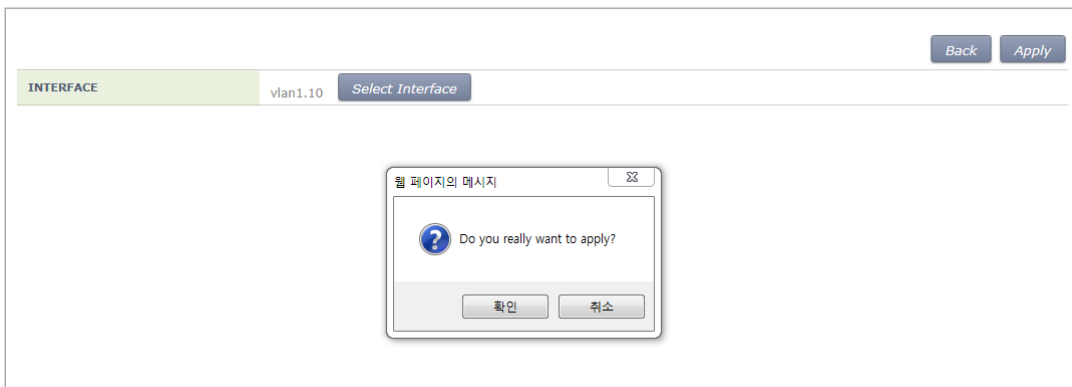


Figure 49. PIM-SM Configuration Window (4)

3.8 IGMP Snooping

Configuration using CLI

Use the 'ip igmp snooping' command to enable or disable Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) Snooping.

- ip igmp snooping
- no ip igmp snooping

When this command is executed in the Configure mode, the IGMP Snooping of a bridge is enabled or disabled. If it is executed in the interface mode, the IGMP Snooping of an interface is enabled or disabled.

Configuring the IGMP Snooping of a bridge:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ip igmp snooping
```

Configuring the IGMP Snooping of a VLAN interface:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# interface vlan1.10
WEC8500/configure/interface vlan1.10# ip igmp snooping
```

In addition, a specific function of the IGMP Snooping functions of a VLAN interface can be enabled or disabled as shown in the below command.

[ip igmp snooping fast-leave]

This command enables or disables the Fast-Leave function. (Default: Enable status)

- ip igmp snooping fast-leave
- no ip igmp snooping fast-leave

[ip igmp snooping querier]

This command enables or disables the Querier function. (Default: Enable status)

- ip igmp snooping querier
- no ip igmp snooping querier

[ip igmp snooping report-suppression]

This command enables or disables the Report-suppression function. (Default: Enable status)

- ip igmp snooping report-suppression
- no ip igmp snooping report-suppression

[ip igmp snooping mroute]

This command enables or disables the Mroute function.

- ip igmp snooping mroute [INTERFACE]
- no ip igmp snooping mroute [INTERFACE]

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Multicast> → <IGMP Snooping> menu in the sub-menus.

[Config]

Enables or disables the IGMP Snooping function or configures related functions.

To perform configuration for STATE, FAST LEAVE, QUERIER STATE, or REPORT SUPPRESSION STATE, select Enable or Disable and click the <Apply> button.

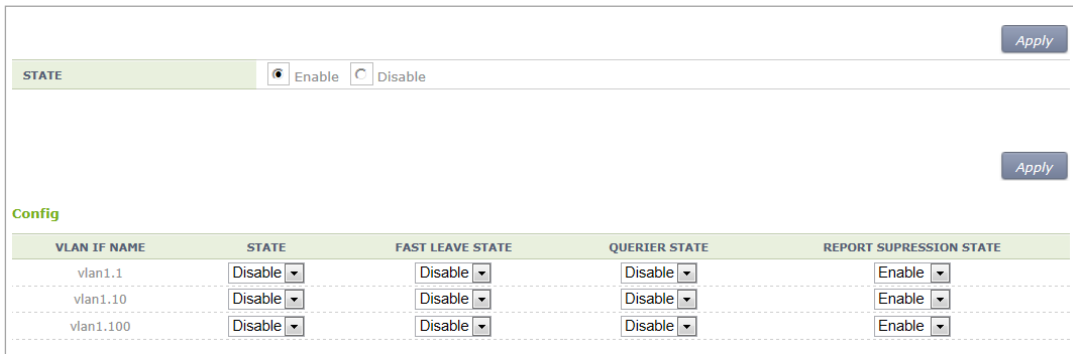


Figure 50. IGMP Snooping Config Window

[Mroute]

The PIM-SM initial window is shown below. When you click the <Add> or <Delete> button, you can add or delete PIM-SM configuration.

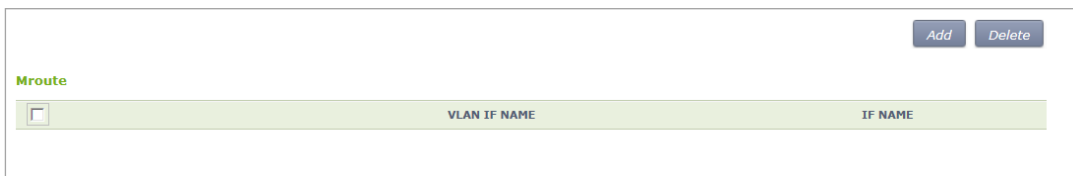


Figure 51. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (1)

- 1) In the PIM-SM initial window, click the <Add> button.

- 2) Click the <Select Vlan> button.

Figure 52. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (2)

- 3) Select a VLAN interface that will be added to the Mroute.

VLAN IF NAME	STATE	FAST LEAVE STATE	QUERIER STATE	REPORT SUPPRESSION STATE
vlan1.1	Disable	Disable	Disable	Enable
vlan1.10	Disable	Disable	Disable	Enable
vlan1.100	Disable	Disable	Disable	Enable

1

Figure 53. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (3)

- 4) The selected interface is displayed on the window. Click the <Apply> button to apply the configuration.

Figure 54. IGMP Snooping Mroute Creation Window (4)

CHAPTER 4. AP Connection Management

This chapter describes the various configuration methods to manage the connection between the APC and AP.

4.1 APC Management

4.1.1 Managing APC List

To enable the APC system to provide the cluster or redundancy service, several APC systems must be installed at a site and each APC must have the information of other APC systems.

Therefore, the APC system provides the function of managing the list of APCs that will provide the cluster or redundancy function. And the APCs added to the APC list are used during cluster or redundancy configuration.

One APC system that will be saved in the APC list consists of an APC name and Medium Access Control (MAC) information. For the MAC address of another APC system, enter the MAC address retrieved from the Monitor → Summary → Inventory → MAC Address menu of system WEC screen.

By default, its own system information is added to the APC list. For the APC, operator can only change its name, but cannot delete it forcibly or change its MAC address.

The maximum number of APC systems that can be registered per model is as follows:

APC Model	The maximum number of APC systems that can be registered
WEC8500	12
WEC8050	2

Configuration using CLI

The procedures for configuration are as follows.

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc/apc-list#
```

- 2) Go to the apc-list item of CLI.

```
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc/apc-list#
```

- 3) Add, delete or change APC.

- add-apc [APC_NAME] [MAC_ADDRESS]
- del-apc [APC_NAME]
- change-apc [CURRENT_APC_NAME] [NEW_APC_NAME]
- change-mac [APC_NAME] [MAC_ADDRESS]

Parameter	Description
APC_NAME	APC name
CURRENT_APC_NAME	Current APC name (before change)
NEW_APC_NAME	APC name after change
IP_ADDRESS	APC MAC address (xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx) In the APC system, enter the system mac address output parameter value of 'show system info' command.)

- 4) To check the configured APC list, execute the 'show apc-list' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <APC Lists> menu in the sub-menus. Operator can add a new APC by clicking the <Add> button in the figure.



Figure 55. APC List Management Window

4.1.2 Management Interface Configuration

The APC can communicate with a W-EP wireless LAN AP using management interface. This is one of the information that must be configured first of all for wireless LAN service.

Configuration using CLI

To configure management interface, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configuration#
```

- 2) Configure a management interface.
 - apc ap-mgmt-if [IP_ADDRESS]

Parameter	Description
IP_ADDRESS	IP address of APC that is used for communication with a W-EP wireless LAN AP

- 3) To check the configured IP information, use the 'show apc summary' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

After entering a configuration in the AP Management of the window, click the <Apply> button.

The screenshot displays the 'Controller > General' configuration page. It features three main sections, each with an 'Apply' button:

- AP Management:** IP ADDRESS is set to 10.10.10.11, and INTERFACE is set to vlan1.110.
- AP Registration:** The 'AUTO' option is set to 'Enable'.
- Repeater Service:** The 'SERVICE' option is set to 'Disable'.

Below the Repeater Service section, there is a partially visible 'SIP ALG' section with options for 'SIP ALG (VOIP AWARE)', 'SIP ERROR RESPONSE', and 'SIP DETECT LONG DURATION CALL', all of which are currently set to 'Enable'.

Figure 56. Management interface configuration

4.1.3 CAPWAP Configuration

A secured tunnel is created between APC and W-EP wireless LAN AP using Control And Provisioning Wireless Access Point (CAPWAP), i.e. a standard protocol, and data is transmitted through the tunnel. An encrypted data is used for both wire and wireless sections, high security is provided.

The CAPWAP channel consists of control channel and data channel depending on the type of packet being transmitted/received. The control channel handles provisioning and configuration/control messages and the data channel transmits the data traffic exchanged with a wireless terminal through CAPWAP tunneling. Because the control channel transmits the wireless LAN configuration information, there should be no data loss. Therefore, the re-transmission function is basically provided. In addition, the Datagram Transmission Layer Security (DTLS) is mandatorily used for the security of transmitted data. Meanwhile, as user data traffic is transmitted through the data channel, a faster response is preferred instead of packet transmission reliability. Therefore, the re-transmission function is not provided and the DTLS function is also optional.

For CAPWAP configuration, execute the following commands.

- 1) Go to configure → apc → capwap of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc/capwap#
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc/capwap#
```

- 2) Configure the CAPWAP function using the following commands.
 - add-multicast-if [VLAN_ID]: Configure a VLAN ID for multicast interface.
 - auto-discovery: Configures the function of automatically detecting and registering an AP.
 - auto-discovery-ap-group [AP_GROUP_ID]: Configures an AP group that will be working when an AP is automatically registered.
 - change-state-pending-timer [TIMER]: Configures the maximum waiting time until the APC receives the Change State Event Request message from an AP after transmitting the Configuration Status Response message to the AP (RFC 5415).
 - ctr-src-port [port]: Changes the CAPWAP Control port (RFC5415).
 - date-check-timer [TIMER]: Configures the maximum waiting time until the APC receives Data Channel Keep-alive (default: 30 seconds)
 - discovery-by-broadcast: Configures whether to allow connection to CAPWAP broadcast.

- `discovery-by-multicast`: Configures whether to allow connection to CAPWAP multicast. (The `'add-multicast-if'` must be configured before configuring whether to allow multicast connection.)
- `discovery-del-timer`: If the Join message is not received after receiving a Discovery message, this configures the timeout to discard the previously received Discovery messages.
- `dtls-session-delete [TIMER]`: Configures the waiting time to disconnect DTLS when releasing the connection between an AP and CAPWAP.
- `retransmit-interval [INTERVAL]`: Configures the re-transmission interval of CAPWAP control packet retransmission.
- `max-retransmit [COUNT]`: Configures maximum number of retransmission when there is no answer for CAPWAP control packet transmission.
- `wait-dtls-timer [TIMER]`: Configures the maximum time until the AP waits without receiving the DTLS handshake message from the APC (RFC 5415) (default: 60 seconds)
- `wait-join-timer [TIMER]`: Configures the maximum time until the APC receives the Join message after finishing DTLS handshake (RFC 5415) (default: 60 seconds)
- `window-size [size]`: Configures the maximum number of packets that can be transmitted without response during CAPWAP control packet transmission.

An example of entering a command is shown below.

```
WEC8500/configure/apc/capwap# date-check-timer 30
```

- 3) To check the configured CAPWAP information, use the `'show apc capwap summary'` command.

4.1.4 AP Registration (Auto Discovery) Configuration

The APC provides the AP auto-discovery function that automatically registers APs in the same network without having to configure any settings in advance. To configure the function, execute the following commands.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → apc → capwap of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc # capwap
WEC8500/configure/apc/capwap #
```

- 2) Configure the automatic registration function.
 - auto-discovery
- 3) Configure an AP group that will be working after AP automatic registration.
 - auto-discovery-ap-group [AP_GROUP_ID]

Parameter	Description
AP_GROUP_ID	ap-group that will be working after AP automatic registration

- 4) To check the configured information, use the ‘show apc capwap summary’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <General> menu from the sub-menus.

After entering a configuration in the AP Registration of the window, click the <Apply> button.

Figure 57. AP Registration Method Setup Window

4.1.5 Managing AP File Transmission

It provides the configuration and transmission management function for the tech support file of the AP.

4.1.5.1 Tech Support Information File

- 1) Go to configure → APC mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc#
```

- 2) Configure a file transmission method to collect the AP Tech support information.
 - tech-support [MODE]

Parameter	Description
MODE	Selects file transmission method (ftp/sftp/http). - tftp is not supported.

- 3) If AP debug information collection is failed, configure maximum number of retries.
 - tech-support max-retry [COUNT]

Parameter	Description
COUNT	Number of retries.

- 4) To check the configuration information, use the 'show ap tech-support' command.

4.1.6 APC Redundancy Configuration

An operator can add a backup APC to an AP to make the backup APC provide the service even when an APC fault occurs.

The maximum number of backup APCs that can be registered to one AP per model is as follows:

APC Model	The maximum number of APC systems that can be registered
WEC8500	3 (Primary Server, Secondary Server, Tertiary Server)
WEC8050	2 (Primary Server, Secondary Server)

If a fault occurs to the primary APC while an AP is connected to the primary APC, the AP is connected to the secondary APC. If a fault also occurs to the secondary APC, the AP is connected to the tertiary APC. For reference, the WEC8050 model does not support a tertiary APC.

Operator can also configure fallback to return to the original APC from the backup APC during the service. If the fallback operation is configured, the AP periodically performs health check to check whether the primary APC can be connected. When the connection is required, it can immediately perform fallback according to the fallback option or can perform fallback on a specified time. The reason why configuring fallback time zone is to minimize the service interruption due to fallback by making it happens when the load is low.

In an APC, operator can configure the primary and backup APCs of an AP in the following steps.

- 1) Register APCs to the APC list.
In the 'APC List Management', how to add the APC list is described.
- 2) Add the APCs in the APC list to redundancy.
If necessary, configure the fallback function.
And then, operator can configure the APCs added to redundancy as the primary, secondary, or tertiary server of an AP.
- 3) Configure a primary, secondary, and tertiary server per AP. To make an AP operate in redundancy configuration, configure the Discovery Type of the AP as 'APC Referral'.
Use the Multi-Set function of WEC to configure several APs at the same time.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) By referring to the 'AP List Management', add the APC list that will be used as a backup APC.
- 2) After entering into the configure → redundancy mode, add or delete the APCs in the APC list. If necessary, configure the fallback function.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# redundancy
WEC8500/configure/redundancy#
```

- add-apc [APC_NAME] [IP_ADDRESS] [PORT]
- del-apc [APC_NAME]
- fallback-enable now
- fallback-enable at-time [FALLBACK START-END TIME]
- fallback-interval [INTERVAL]

Parameter	Description
APC_NAME	Name of an APC to be added or deleted to/from redundancy The APC must be an APC registered in the APC list.
IP_ADDRESS	IP address of an APC to add This address is an IP required by an AP to connect to the APC. Therefore, you must enter the AP Management IP address of the APC.

Parameter	Description
PORT	CAPWAP PORT number of the APC to add This port number is required by an AP to connect to the APC. If no port number is entered, it is set to 5246, the default port number of CAPWAP protocol. It is recommended not to use a different port number if it is specially required.
FALLBACK START-END TIME	Enter the time zone where an AP connected to the backup (secondary or tertiary) APC can do fallback. The input format is as follows: - Format: hh:mm-hh:mm - Example: 2:00-5:00 ← Fallback is available between 2pm and 5pm.
INTERVAL	Configures the interval that an AP connected to the backup (secondary or tertiary) APC attempts fallback (second). If a specific time is not entered, the default is 120 seconds. The minimum is 60 seconds and the maximum is 1800 seconds.

- 3) Enter into the configure → AP configuration mode of CLI and configure a primary, secondary, and tertiary server. To make an AP operate in redundancy configuration, configure the Discovery of the AP as ‘apc-referral’.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_1
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1#
```

- discovery apc-referral
- primary-apc [APC_NAME]
- secondary-apc [APC_NAME]
- tertiary-apc [APC_NAME]

Parameter	Description
APC_NAME	Enter the name of an APC registered to redundancy. - Primary apc: The first APC that the AP attempts to connect. It is usually configured with the currently connected APC. - Secondary-apc, tertiary-apc: APC that the AP attempts to connect when there is no response from the primary-apc.
DISCOVERY_TYPE	Discovery Type - ap-followed: Discovery type is set by AP. - apc-referral: Discovery type is set by APC using the backup APC lists. To apply the priority of APC to which the AP will be connected, operator needs to select the apc-referral. - DHCP: Discovery type is interoperating with the DHCP server. To use this mode, IP ADDRESS POLICY of the AP must be set to DHCP. - Auto: Discovery type is automatically changed by the AP for automatic connection to the APC.

- 4) To check the configured apc list, execute the ‘show apc summary’ command.
- 5) To check the redundancy information, execute the ‘show redundancy summary’ command.
- 6) To check the configured AP profile, execute the ‘show ap detail [AP_PROFILE_NAME]’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

By referring to the ‘APC List Management’, add the APC list that will be used as a backup APC.

- 1) In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Redundancy> menu in the sub-menus. Operator can add or delete the APC list that will be used for redundancy. If necessary, operator can configure the fallback function.

APC NAME	MAC ADDRESS	IP ADDRESS	PORT	PUBLIC IP ADDRESS	PUBLIC PORT
WEC8500	00:7e:37:00:1e:80	100.100.100.1	5246	0.0.0.0	5246
BackAPC1	00:7e:37:00:13:89	165.213.66.252	5246	0.0.0.0	5246

Figure 58. Redundancy Configuration Window

Parameter	Description
APC NAME	Name of an APC to be added or deleted to/from redundancy The APC must be an APC registered in the APC list.
MAC ADDRESS	Because this is a MAC address configured during registration to the APC list, an operator does not have to enter this at the redundancy configuration stage.
IP_ADDRESS	IP address of an APC to add This address is an IP required by an AP to connect to the APC. Therefore, you must enter the AP Management IP address of the APC.
PORT	CAPWAP PORT number of the APC to add If no port number is entered, it is set to 5246, the default port number of

Parameter	Description
	CAPWAP protocol. It is recommended not to use a different port number if it is specially required.
PUBLIC_IP_ADD RESS	PUBLIC IP address of the APC to add This address is an IP required by an AP to connect to the APC. If the APC is in the NAT environment, you must enter an official IP configured in the NAT instead of the private IP of APC.
PUBLIC_PORT	PUBLIC CAPWAP PORT number of the APC to add This port number is required by an AP to connect to the APC. If the APC is under the NAT environment, you must enter the port number configured in the NAT instead of the actual CAPWAP port number of APC.
FALLBACK START-END TIME	Enter the time zone where an AP connected to the backup (secondary or tertiary) APC can do fallback. The input format is as follows: Format: hh:mm-hh:mm Example: 2:00-5:00 ← Fallback is available between 2pm and 5pm.
INTERVAL	Configures the interval that an AP connected to the backup (secondary or tertiary) APC attempts fallback (second). If a specific time is not entered, the default is 120 seconds. The minimum is 60 seconds and the maximum is 1800 seconds.

- 2) In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> menu in the sub-menus. Click the name of AP Profile to which the redundancy function will be applied. After configuring the DISCOVERY TYPE of AP to ‘APC Referral’, select the PRIMARY CONTROLLER NAME, SECONDARY CONTROLLER NAME, and TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME. For the WEC8500 model, the TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME is not shown in the menu.

AP PROFILE NAME	AP NAME	MAC	IP ADDRESS	ADMIN STATUS	OPER STATUS	MAP LOCATION	MODE	MODEL	VERSION
ap_1	AP_f4d9fb24cba0	f4:d9:fb:24:cb:a0	100.100.100.50	Up	Up		General AP(r)	WEA303i	1.4.3.R

Figure 59. AP retrieving window

AP PROFILE NAME	ap_1
AP NAME	<input type="text" value="AP_f4d9fb24cba0"/>
AP GROUP NAME	default
REMOTE AP GROUP NAME	RemoteAPGroup_test
AP MODE ¹	<input type="button" value="General AP"/>
MAC ADDRESS	f4:d9:fb:24:cb:a0
MAP LOCATION	
LOCATION	<input type="text"/>
IP ADDRESS	100.100.100.50
IP ADDRESS POLICY	<input type="radio"/> DHCP <input checked="" type="radio"/> AP Priority (AP Followed) <input type="radio"/> Static IP
IP ADDRESS	<input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/>
NETMASK	<input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/>
GATEWAY	<input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/> . <input type="text" value="0"/>
DISCOVERY TYPE ²	<input type="button" value="APC Referral"/> Current Discovery Type : Static
ADMIN STATUS	Up
OPER STATUS	Up
PRIMARY CONTROLLER NAME ³	<input type="button" value="WEC8500 (100.100.100.1)"/>
SECONDARY CONTROLLER NAME ³	<input type="button" value="BackAPC1 (165.213.66.252)"/>
TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME ³	<input type="button" value="-----"/>

Figure 60. AP redundancy Configuration Window

Parameter	Description
APC_NAME	Enter the name of an APC registered to redundancy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Primary apc: The first APC that the AP attempts to connect. It is usually configured with the currently connected APC. - Secondary-apc, tertiary-apc: APC that the AP attempts to connect when there is no response from the primary-apc.
DISCOVERY_TYPE	Discovery Type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ap-followed: Discovery type is set by AP. - apc-referral: Discovery type is set by APC using the backup APC lists. To apply the priority of APC to which the AP will be connected, operator needs to select the apc-referral. - Auto: Discovery type is automatically changed by the AP for automatic connection to the APC. - DHCP: Discovery type is interoperating with the DHCP server. To use this mode, IP ADDRESS POLICY of the AP must be set to DHCP.

4.2 AP Management

4.2.1 AP Group Configuration

The APC manages the services provided to the AP by group. An operator can add or delete several APs to/from a group. It is also possible to add/remove WLANs to/from an AP group so that the same WLAN services can be provided for each group.

When the APC is installed for the first time, a 'default' group is created. When the AP information is created first time, the AP is automatically added to the 'default' group. If the 'auto-discovery' mode is enabled in the APC, an AP connected to the APC is automatically added to the 'default' group. For reference, operator can specify a specific AP group where an AP will be added during auto-discovery configuration.

An operator can manage the services per group by creating a new AP group and can move or a specific AP to another group or delete it in the original group. The APs deleted in a group are automatically moved to the 'default' group.

When a new AP group is created, it is possible to configure AP information for each group. If the Overwrite option is enabled for each setting, the respective setting is applied to all APs within the group.

Generally, up to 16 WLANs can be added to an AP group. However, if a root AP is contained in an AP group, only up to 15 WLANs can be added to the group.

If the AP group information is changed, i.e. if an AP moves to another group, the AP uses the WLAN of a new group. Therefore, some existing WLANs in the AP are deleted and some new WLANs can be added. The detail example is shown below.

(Example) Default group: Includes wlan1, wlan2, wlan3, and wlan4.

New group: Includes wlan4, wlan5, and wlan6.

When the AP_1 moves from the default group to a new group

The APC asks the AP_1 to delete the wlan1, wlan2, and wlan3.

The APC asks the AP_1 to add the wlan5 and wlan6.

Configuration using CLI

To manage an AP group, execute the command as follows.

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

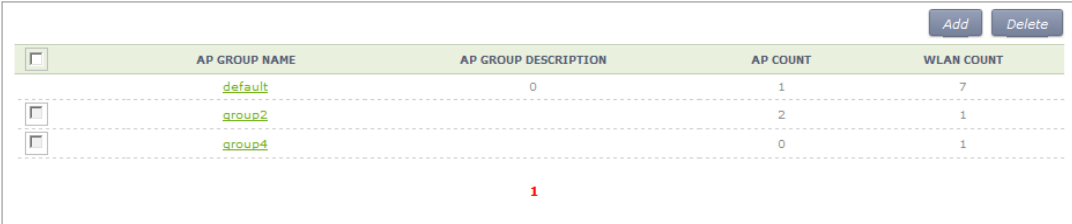
```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Create or delete an AP group. Use 'no' parameter in front of the command to delete an AP group.
 - ap-group [AP_GROUP_NAME]
 - no ap-group [AP_GROUP_NAME]
- 3) Add or delete an AP to or from the AP group. Use 'no' parameter in front of the command to delete an AP from the AP group. But, for a default AP group, you cannot delete an AP from the group. If you delete an AP from other AP groups other than the default group, the deleted AP is included into the default AP group.
 - add-ap [AP_NAME]
 - no add-ap [AP_NAME]
- 4) Use the 'show ap-group summary' command to check the AP group information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <AP Groups> menu in the sub-menus. It provides the group configuration of the AP.

Click the <Add> or <Delete> button to add or delete a group.



AP GROUP NAME	AP GROUP DESCRIPTION	AP COUNT	WLAN COUNT
default	0	1	7
group2		2	1
group4		0	1

Figure 61. AP groups configuration Window



AP Groups > Add

GROUP NAME

Back Apply

Figure 62. AP Group Addition Window

4.2.1.1 General AP Group Settings

To aid management of APs in groups, the APC allows configuration of settings which can be applied commonly to each group. The following functions are provided:

Parameter	Description
Description	This configures the description of the AP group.
AP Mode	This configures the operation mode of the AP. The operator can select General AP, Root AP, or Repeater AP.
Location	This configures the installation location information of the AP.
IP Mode	This configures the IP configuration mode of the AP. The operator can select DHCP or AP Priority.
AP Status	This configures the up/down status of the AP.
Redundancy	If the APCs are configured for redundancy, this configures the discovery type and Primary/Secondary/Tertiary Controller settings of the AP.

The APC provides the overwrite option for each AP group setting. If the Overwrite option is enabled for each setting, the respective setting is applied to all APs within the group. For example, if the Overwrite option is enabled for AP Mode and AP Mode is set to General, all the APs within the group will run as General APs.

Configuration using CLI

To configure redundancy settings for the AP group, perform the following commands:

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Enter the AP Group configuration mode.
 - ap-group [AP_GROUP_NAME]
- 3) Enter the profile configuration mode for the AP group.
 - Profile
- 4) Configure the following AP group profiles:
 - description
 - overwrite-ap-mode
 - no overwrite-ap-mode
 - ap-mode
 - overwrite-location
 - no overwrite-location
 - location

- overwrite-ip-mode
- no overwrite-ip-mode
- ip-mode
- overwrite-state
- no overwrite-state
- shutdown
- no shutdown
- no overwrite-redundancy
- discovery
- primary-apc
- no primary-apc
- secondary-apc
- no secondary-apc
- tertiary-apc
- no tertiary-apc

Parameter	Description
DESCRIPTION	This contains a brief description of the AP group.
OVERWRITE-AP-MODE	If overwrite-ap-mode is enabled, the AP mode information set for the group is applied to all APs within the group.
AP-MODE	This is the AP operation mode. The following modes are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - generalAp: General operation mode. Default value. - rootAp: AP mode where a repeater AP can be connected. - repeaterAp: AP mode that is connected to a wireless area and the APC through the root AP.
OVERWRITE-LOCATION	If overwrite-location is enabled, the location information set for the group is applied to all APs within the group.
LOCATION	This is the location information of the AP.
OVERWRITE-IP-MODE	If overwrite-ip is enabled, the IP mode information set for the group is applied to all APs within the group.
IP-MODE	This is the mode of receiving an IP address by the AP. The following modes are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - dhcp: The AP receives IP address allocation using DHCP. - ap: The AP uses a manually configured IP address.
OVERWRITE-STATE	If overwrite-state is enabled, the AP state information set for the group is applied to all APs within the group.
shutdown	This sets the AP state to UP or DOWN.
OVERWRITE-REDUNDANCY	If overwrite-redundancy is enabled, the redundancy setting (primary-apc, secondary-apc, tertiary-apc) of the AP group is applied to all APs within the group.
DISCOVERY	If the APCs are configured for redundancy, this configures the method used for APs to connect to the APC. The following modes are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ap-followed: The discovery type and discovery list configured for the

Parameter	Description
	<p>AP are used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - apc-referral: The APC list configured for the APC is used as the discovery list. - DHCP: The APC list information relayed by DHCP option 138 (IPv4) or option 52 (IPv6) is used as the discovery list. - auto: Discovery type is automatically changed by the AP for automatic connection to the APC.
PRIMARY-APC	This is the name of the primary APC server. The AP attempts to connect to this APC first.
SECONDARY-APC	This is the name of the secondary APC server. If the AP is unable to connect to the primary APC, the AP attempts to connect to this APC on its second connection attempt.
TERTIARY-APC	This is the name of the tertiary APC server. If the AP is unable to connect to the secondary APC, the AP attempts to connect to this APC on its third connection attempt. The WEC8050 model does not support Tertiary-APC.

- 5) Use the ‘show ap-group detail [AP_GROUP_NAME]’ command to check the AP group information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <AP Groups> in the submenu, and then select an AP group to configure. In the ‘General’ tab of the AP group, configure the necessary settings. If the OVERWRITE AP CONFIG checkbox is selected, the respective setting is applied to all APs within the group.

The screenshot shows the 'General' configuration tab for an AP group. The configuration includes:

- AP GROUP NAME: testgroup01
- AP GROUP DESCRIPTION: 0
- AP COUNT: 3
- WLAN COUNT: 16
- OVERWRITE AP CONFIG:
- AP MODE: General AP
- OVERWRITE AP CONFIG:
- LOCATION: 0
- OVERWRITE AP CONFIG:
- IP MODE: DHCP AP Priority (AP Followed)
- OVERWRITE AP CONFIG:
- ADMIN STATUS: Enable Disable
- OVERWRITE AP CONFIG:
- DISCOVERY TYPE: AP Followed
- PRIMARY CONTROLLER NAME: [Dropdown]
- SECONDARY CONTROLLER NAME: [Dropdown]

Figure 63. General Configuration Window for AP Group

4.2.1.2 Adding/Removing APs

To aid management of APs in groups, the APC allows addition/removal of APs to/from AP groups.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configuration#
```

- 2) Create an AP group or enter the AP group configuration mode.
 - ap-group [AP_GROUP_NAME]
- 3) Add/remove an AP to/from the AP group. Use 'no' parameter in front of the command to delete an AP from the AP group. However, you cannot delete an AP from a default AP group. If you delete an AP from groups other than the default group, the deleted AP is then included in the default AP group.
 - add-ap [AP_NAME]
 - no add-ap [AP_NAME]
- 4) Use the 'show ap-group summary' command to check the AP group information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <AP Groups> in the submenu, and then select an AP group to configure. Under the ‘APs’ tab of the AP group, APs can be added or removed.

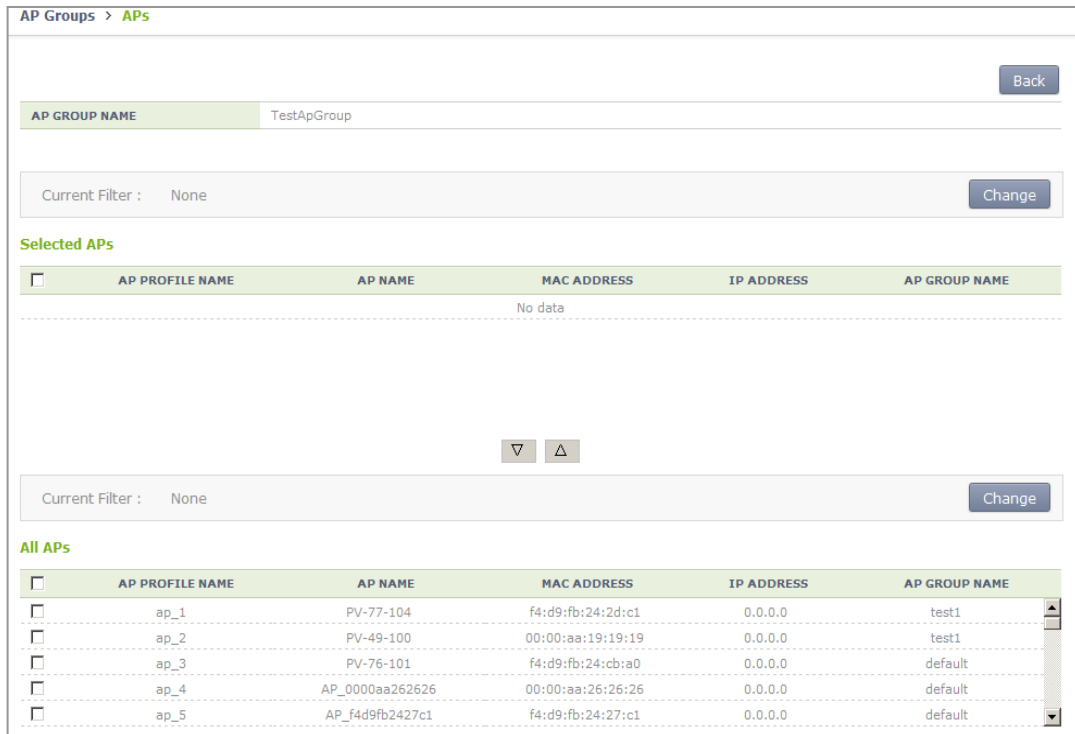


Figure 64. AP Add/Remove Window for AP Group

4.2.1.3 Adding/Removing WLANs

To allow the same WLAN services to be provided to the APs allocated to each group, the APC allows addition/removal of WLANs to/from each AP group.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Create an AP group or enter the AP group configuration mode.
 - ap-group [AP_GROUP_NAME]

- 3) Add/remove an WLAN to/from the AP group. Use 'no' parameter in front of the command to delete an WLAN from the AP group.
 - add-wlan [WLAN_ID]
 - no add-wlan [WLAN_ID]
- 4) Use the 'show ap-group summary' command to check the AP group information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <AP Groups> in the submenu, and then select an AP group to configure. Under the 'WLANs' tab of the AP group, WLANs can be added or removed.

The screenshot shows the 'WLANs' configuration window for the 'default' AP group. It features a 'Back' button and a 'Current Filter : None' section with a 'Change' button. Below this, there are two tables:

Selected WLANs

<input type="checkbox"/>	PROFILE NAME	SSID	INTERFACE GROUP
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan2	ztest_wlan2	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan3	ztest_wlan3	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan4	ztest_wlan4	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan5	ztest_wlan5	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan6	ztest_wlan6	aaaa

Below the 'Selected WLANs' table is another 'Current Filter : None' section with a 'Change' button.

All WLANs

<input type="checkbox"/>	PROFILE NAME	SSID	INTERFACE GROUP
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan17	ztest_wlan17	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan18	ztest_wlan18	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan19	ztest_wlan19	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan20	ztest_wlan20	aaaa
<input type="checkbox"/>	wlan21	ztest_wlan21	aaaa

Figure 65. WLAN Add/Remove Window for AP Group

4.2.1.4 802.11a/n Configuration

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <AP Groups> in the submenu, and then select an AP group to configure. Settings can be configured under the '802.11a/n' tab of the AP group.

AP GROUP NAME	test	Back	Apply
SERVICE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
CURRENT CHANNEL	149	Apply	
CHANNEL FIX	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
TX CURRENT POWER (DBM)	20	Apply	
TX POWER FIX	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		

Figure 66. 802.11a/n Window for AP Group

The configuration items are as follows:

[Service Configuration of AP Group]

- SERVICE: Enable or disable the radio service.

[Channel Configuration]

- CURRENT CHANNEL: Channel configuration (range: 36-165)
- CHANNEL FIX: The configured channel is configured as fixed and it is not affected by automatic adjustment functions such as RRM. When the <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac> menu is selected, the channel value is shown as * (optional).

[TX Power Setting]

- TX CURRENT POWER: TX power (range: 3-23)
- TX POWER FIX: The configured TX power is configured as fixed and it is not affected by automatic adjustment functions such as RRM. When the <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac> menu is selected, the TxPower value is shown as * (optional).



NOTE

To check the configured channel and TX power information, go to <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac>.

4.2.1.5 802.11b/g/n Configuration

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <AP Groups> in the submenu, and then select an AP group to configure. Settings can be configured under the '802.11b/g/n' tab of the AP group.

AP GROUP NAME	test	Back	Apply
SERVICE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
CURRENT CHANNEL	5	Apply	
CHANNEL FIX	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
TX CURRENT POWER (DBM)	15	Apply	
TX POWER FIX	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		

Figure 67. 802.11b/g/n Window for AP Group

The configuration items are as follows:

[Service Configuration of AP Group]

- SERVICE: Enable or disable the radio service.

[Channel Configuration]

- CURRENT CHANNEL: Channel configuration (range: 1-14)
- CHANNEL FIX: The configured channel is configured as fixed and it is not affected by automatic adjustment functions such as RRM. When the <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11b/g/n> menu is selected, the channel value is shown as * (optional).

[TX Power Setting]

- TX CURRENT POWER: TX power (range: 3-23)
- TX POWER FIX: The configured TX power is configured as fixed and it is not affected by automatic adjustment functions such as RRM. When the <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11b/g/n> menu is selected, the TxPower value is shown as * (optional).



NOTE

To check the configured channel and TX power information, go to <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11b/g/n>.

4.2.1.6 Advanced Configuration

In order to provide the same services to the APs allocated to each group, the APC allows configuration of advanced settings for each AP group.

Configuring AP Group Profile with CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configuration#
```

- 2) Create an AP group or enter the AP group configuration mode.
 - ap-group [AP_GROUP_NAME]
- 3) Enter the profile configuration mode for the AP group.
 - profile
- 4) Configure the following AP group profiles:
 - overwrite-apc-ap-timer
 - no overwrite-apc-ap-timer
 - echo-interval
 - discovery-interval
 - report-interval
 - statistics-timer
 - retransmit-interval
 - echo-retransmit-interval
 - max-echo-retransmit
 - overwrite-telnet-ssh
 - no overwrite-telnet-ssh
 - telnet-enable
 - no telnet-enable
 - ssh-enable
 - no ssh-enable
 - overwrite-console
 - no overwrite-console
 - console-enable
 - no console-enable
 - overwrite-dtls
 - no overwrite-dtls
 - dtls-policy
 - overwrite-led-control
 - no overwrite-led-control
 - led-config

- overwrite-vlan
- no overwrite-vlan
- vlan-support
- no vlan-support
- native-vlanId
- no native-vlanId

Parameter	Description
DESCRIPTION	This contains a brief description of the AP group.
OVERWRITE-APC-AP-TIMER	If overwrite-apc-ap-timer is enabled, the APC-AP timer setting of the group is applied to all APs within the group.
ECHO-INTERVAL	Configures the time when an echo request message is transmitted to the APC where an AP joins (unit: seconds).
DISCOVERY-INTERVAL	Configures a waiting time until the CAPWAP discovery response message is received (unit: seconds).
REPORT-INTERVAL	Configures the time interval for transmitting the description error from AP to the APC (unit: seconds).
STATISTICS-TIMER	Configures the time interval for transmitting the statistical information provided by the CAPWAP (unit: seconds).
RETRANSMIT-INTERVAL	The APC waits for this length of time before retransmitting an echo request message when there is no response. The APC sets double the length of echo-interval as the echo timeout time. If no echo message is received from the AP for as long as double the length of the echo-interval, the APC judges that the AP is down (unit: seconds).
MAX-ECHO-RETRANSMIT	The APC waits for this length of time before retransmitting an echo request message when there is no response. The APC sets double the length of echo-interval as the echo timeout time. If no echo message is received from the AP for as long as double the length of the echo-interval, the APC judges that the AP is down (unit: seconds).
OVERWRITE-TELNET-SSH	If overwrite-telnet-ssh is enabled, the telnet and SSH settings for the AP group are applied to all APs within the group.
TELNET-ENABLE	This enables the telnet server and configures telnet port of the AP.
SSH-ENABLE	This enables the SSH server and configures SSH port of the AP.
OVERWRITE-CONSOLE	If overwrite-console is enabled, the telnet and SSH settings of the AP group are applied to all APs within the group.
CONSOLE-ENABLE	This configures whether to allow console access to the AP.
OVERWRITE-DTLS	If overwrite-dtls is enabled, the DTLS settings of the AP group are applied to all APs within the group.
DTLS-POLICY	Configures the DTLS Policy of an AP.
OVERWRITE-LED-CONTROL	If overwrite-led-control is enabled, the LED settings of the AP

Parameter	Description
	group are applied to all APs within the group.
LED-CONFIG	This configures whether to turn the LED on/off.
OVERWRITE-VLAN	If overwrite-vlan is enabled, the VLAN settings of the AP group are applied to all APs within the group.
VLAN-SUPPORT	This configures whether to enable the native VLAN of the AP.
NATIVE-VLANID	This configures the native VLAN value of the AP.

- 5) Use the 'show ap-group detail [AP_GROUP_NAME]' command to check the AP group information.

Configuring AirMove Service of AP Group with CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Create an AP group or enter the AP group configuration mode.
- ap-group [AP_GROUP_NAME]
- 3) Enter the profile configuration mode for the AP group.
- profile
- 4) Configure the AirMove service of the AP group.
- enable: Enables/disables the AirMove service.
 - target-ap: This option is used for selecting APs which will be applied with the changes made to the group settings. If 'all' is selected, changes are applied to all APs and config priority of the APs also change to group. If 'keep-ap-config' is selected, only the APs whose config priority is set to group have the airmove value of the group applied to them.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap-group default
GroupName : default
WEC8500/configure/ap-group default# airmove
WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# ?
  decision-delta      Set delta value for handover decision
  enable              Airmove enable
  exit                Exit from airmove mode
  number-of-channel   Set the number of channel required during
one time scanning
  number-of-proreq    Set the number of probe request required
during one time scanning
```

```

        scan-time-channel      Set time required for one channel scanning
        scan-time-interleave   Set interval time required for new scanning
start
        scan-time-service      Set time required for STA service during
STA's scanning
        scan-trigger-level     Set a trigger level for STA's scanning
start
        target-ap              Set config target ap
        <cr>
WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# enable ?
        <cr>
WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# decision-delta ?
        1 - 100                Enter the value [dBm]

WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# number-of-channel ?
        1 - 20                 Enter the number
WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# number-of-proreq ?
        1 - 10                 Enter the number

WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# scan-time-channel ?
        0 - 100                Enter the time [ms]

WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# scan-time-interleave ?
        1000 - 10000           Enter the time [ms]

WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# scan-time-service ?
        1 - 1000               Enter the time [ms]

WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# scan-trigger-level ?
        -128 - 0               Enter the trigger level [dBm]

WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# target-ap ?
        all                     All
        keep-ap-config          Keep ap config
WEC8500/configure/ap-group default/airmove# end

```

- 4) Use the 'show airmove group [ap_group_name]' command to check the AP group information.

```

WEC8500# show airmove group default

Airmove Group Configurations
-----
Airmove State           Disable
Target AP               Keep Ap Config
Scan trigger level      -70 dBm
Scanning time for one channel 5 ms

```

```

Service time during scanning      100 ms
Scanning interval time          1000 ms
Number of probe requests         2
Number of scanning channels      4
Value of station roam delta      15
WEC8500#
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <AP Groups> in the submenu, and then select an AP group to configure. Advanced settings and AirMove settings of the AP group can be changed under the ‘Advanced’ tab of AP Group.

General	APs	WLANs	802.11a/n	802.11b/g/n	Advanced
AP Groups > Advanced					
AP GROUP NAME: testgroup01					
<input type="checkbox"/> OVERWRITE AP CONFIG					
ECHO INTERVAL (SEC) ¹	30				
MAX DISCOVERY INTERVAL (SEC) ²	20				
REPORT INTERVAL (SEC) ³	120				
STATISTICS TIMER (SEC) ⁴	120				
RETRANSMIT INTERVAL (100MS) ⁵	5				
MAX RETRANSMIT ⁶	5				
ECHO RETRANSMIT INTERVAL (SEC) ⁷	3				
MAX ECHO RETRANSMIT ⁸	5				
<input type="checkbox"/> OVERWRITE AP CONFIG					
TELNET ⁹	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable 50023				
SSH ¹⁰	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable 50022				
<input type="checkbox"/> OVERWRITE AP CONFIG					
CONSOLE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable				
<input type="checkbox"/> OVERWRITE AP CONFIG					
DTLS ¹¹	Disable				
<input type="checkbox"/> OVERWRITE AP CONFIG					
LED	On 00 : 00 ~ 00 : 00				
<input type="checkbox"/> OVERWRITE AP CONFIG					
VLAN SUPPORT ¹²	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable				
NATIVE VLAN ID ¹³	0				
Apply					
AirMove					
SERVICE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable				
TARGET AP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Keeping individual setting				
SCAN TRIGGER LEVEL (DBM)	-70				
SCANNING TIME FOR ONE CHANNEL (MS)	5				
SERVICE TIME DURING SCANNING (MS)	100				
SCANNING INTERVAL TIME (MS)	1000				
NUMBER OF PROBE REQUESTS	2				
NUMBER OF SCANNING CHANNELS	4				
VALUE OF STATION ROAM DELTA (DBM)	15				

Figure 68. Advanced Configuration Window for AP Group

4.2.2 Configuring Remote AP Group

If the APs are located in an area where the APC is not located, those APs must be classified into a separate group for service. The APC can manage the APs in another area by grouping them into a remote AP group.

In the Remote AP group menu, operator can configure the below information and the APs in the Remote AP group are operating based on the same configuration.

- Remote AP Addition/Removal
 - APs can be added to/removed from a remote AP group.
- Local Authentication
 - Radius Server
The Radius server which authenticates stations accessing the remote AP can be configured.
 - Remote AP User List
Users (stations) to be managed by the remote AP can be added/removed.

If an AP is added to or deleted from a remote AP group, the AP is rebooted and reconnected to the APC. If an AP moves between remote AP groups, the AP is not rebooted.

If an AP is added to a remote AP group, the WLAN and default configuration of AP is not changed from the policy configured in the AP group.

4.2.2.1 Addition/Removal Setting

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Create or delete a remote AP group. To delete a remote AP group, enter 'no' parameter in front of the command
 - remote-ap-group [REMOTE_AP_GROUP_NAME]
 - no remote-ap-group [REMOTE_AP_GROUP_NAME]

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Remote AP Groups> menu in the sub-menus. Click the <Add> or <Delete> button to add or delete a group.

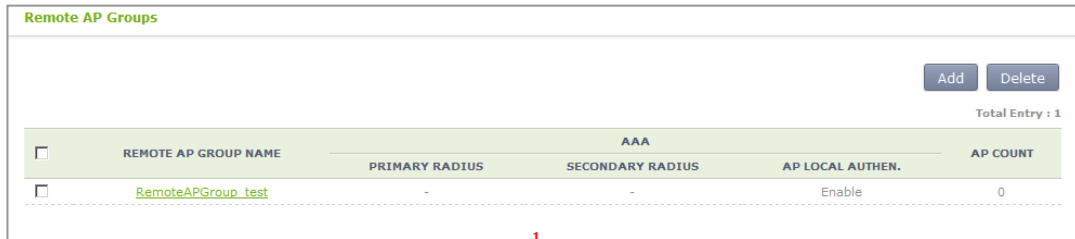


Figure 69. Remote AP Group Add/Remove Window

4.2.2.2 AP Addition/Removal Configuration for Remote AP Group

To aid management of remote APs in groups, the APC allows addition/removal of APs to/from AP groups.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Create or delete a remote AP group. To delete a remote AP group, enter 'no' parameter in front of the command
 - remote-ap-group [REMOTE_AP_GROUP_NAME]
 - no remote-ap-group [REMOTE_AP_GROUP_NAME]
- 3) Add or delete an AP to or from a remote AP group. To delete an AP from the remote AP group, enter 'no' parameter in front of the command. The Region value of an AP added to a remote AP group is automatically changed to Remote and it is automatically re-connected to the APC. If an AP is deleted from a remote AP group, the Region value is changed to Local and the AP is re-connected to the APC.
 - add-ap [AP_NAME]
 - no add-ap [AP_NAME]
- 4) Use the 'show remote-ap-group summary' command to check the AP group information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <Remote AP Groups> in the submenu, and then select a remote AP group to configure. Under the ‘General’ tab of the remote AP group, APs can be added or removed.

Remote AP Groups > General

Back

REMOTE AP GROUP NAME test

Current Filter : None Change

Selected APs

<input type="checkbox"/>	AP PROFILE NAME	AP NAME	MAC ADDRESS	IP ADDRESS	AP GROUP NAME	LOCAL AUTH. LIST STATUS
<input type="checkbox"/>	ap_1	PV-77-104	f4:d9:fb:24:2d:c1	0.0.0.0	test1	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	ap_2	PV-49-100	00:00:aa:19:19:19	0.0.0.0	test1	None

▽ ▲

Current Filter : None Change

All APs

<input type="checkbox"/>	AP PROFILE NAME	AP NAME	MAC ADDRESS	IP ADDRESS	AP GROUP NAME
<input type="checkbox"/>	ap_3	PV-76-101	f4:d9:fb:24:cb:a0	0.0.0.0	default
<input type="checkbox"/>	ap_4	AP_0000aa262626	00:00:aa:26:26:26	0.0.0.0	default
<input type="checkbox"/>	ap_5	AP_f4d9fb2427c1	f4:d9:fb:24:27:c1	0.0.0.0	default
<input type="checkbox"/>	ap_6	AP_0000aa181818	00:00:aa:18:18:18	0.0.0.0	default
<input type="checkbox"/>	ap_7	AP_f4d9fb243141	f4:d9:fb:24:31:41	10.10.10.107	default

Figure 70. AP Add/Remove Window for Remote AP Group

4.2.2.3 Local Authentication Configuration for Remote AP Group

Users (stations) accessing the remote AP and the Radius server which authenticates such users can be configured.

Configuration using CLI

Perform the following commands to configure local authentication settings of the remote AP group:

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configuration#
```

- 2) Create or delete a remote AP group. To delete a remote AP group, enter ‘no’ parameter in front of the command
 - remote-ap-group [REMOTE_AP_GROUP_NAME]

- no remote-ap-group [REMOTE_AP_GROUP_NAME]
- 3) Configure Primary Radius Server 1, Primary Radius Server 2, and Primary Radius Server 3. The RADIUS server information must be created in the radius of the security item in advance. To delete the configured RADIUS server information, enter ‘no’ parameter in front of the command.
- primary-radius [RADIUS_SERVER_INDEX]
 - no primary-radius [RADIUS_SERVER_INDEX]
 - secondary-radius [RADIUS_SERVER_INDEX]
 - no secondary-radius [RADIUS_SERVER_INDEX]
 - tertiary-radius [RADIUS_SERVER_INDEX]
 - no tertiary-radius [RADIUS_SERVER_INDEX]
- 4) Use the ‘show remote-ap-group detail [REMOTE AP GROUP NAME]’ command to check the remote AP group information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Remote AP Groups> menu in the sub-menus. After selecting the name of a remote AP group, you can configure the Radius server or add/remove users under the ‘Local Authentication’ tab.

Remote AP Groups > Local Authentication

Back Apply

REMOTE AP GROUP NAME test

BACKUP RADIUS SERVER 1 ---

BACKUP RADIUS SERVER 2 ---

BACKUP RADIUS SERVER 3 ---

* Configuration > Security > AAA > RADIUS

Send To APs

Current Filter : None Change

Remote AP User List

ID	NAME	DEPARTMENT	E-MAIL
No data			

Current Filter : None Change

Local Net User List

ID	NAME	DEPARTMENT	E-MAIL
<input type="checkbox"/>	1234		

Figure 71. Local Authentication Configuration Window for Remote AP Group

4.2.2.4 Role-based Access Control Configuration of Remote AP Group

If the remote AP is running in local switching mode, the ACL settings between the APC and the AP must be synchronized. The ACL settings are automatically synchronized when the AP capwap runs. However, if the operator changes ACL of the APC, the ACL settings must be synchronized as shown below.

Configuration using CLI

Perform the following commands to synchronize the settings for APs of all remote groups:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# rbac
WEC8500/configure/rbac# sync-config
```

Perform the following commands to synchronize the settings for APs of a specific remote group:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# remote-ap-group rmt_grp_01
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rmt_grp_01# sync-rbac-config
```

Synchronization result can be checked as shown below.

```
WEC8500# show rbac config summary

GRP_ID  GRP_NAME  Role Config File Name
=====  =====  =====
      1    rmt_grp_01
etc/rmtapgrp/rbac_cfg_rmtapgrp1_20140307101643076655.tar
      2    rmt_grp_02  etc/rmtapgrp/rbac_cfg_20140305094752849046.tar
```

Configuration using Web UI

Configuration > Security > Role Based Access Control → ‘Send To Aps’

Security > Role Based Access Control

Add Delete Send To Aps

Total Entry : 1

PROFILE NAME	ACL RULE	USER QOS	VLAN ID
role_01	acl1	1 (qos1)	10

1

Figure 72. ACL Settings Synchronization-All

Configuration > Remote AP Groups

→ select remote ap group & ‘Send RBAC Config To Aps’

Remote AP Groups

Add Delete Send RBAC Config To Aps

Total Entry : 7

REMOTE AP GROUP NAME	AAA			AP COUNT
	BACKUP RADIUS SERVER 1	BACKUP RADIUS SERVER 2	BACKUP RADIUS SERVER 3	
remotetestgroup01	100.100.100.101 : 1812	100.100.100.102 : 1812	Internal	0
remotetestgroup02	-	-	-	0

Figure 73. ACL Settings Synchronization-Remote Group

4.2.3 AP Time Synchronization per Group

The AP can configure its time information using either the time stamp method or the NTP method.

In the Time Stamp type, the APC periodically transmits the time of APC to an AP and the AP is operating based on the received time. Unless a user changes the configuration, the default is Time Stamp type and the interval is set to 7200 seconds (2 hours).

In the NTP type, the NTP server information is transmitted to an AP and the AP synchronizes the time with the NTP server. A NTP server list must be created to transmit the NTP server information to an AP and maximum 10 lists can be added. The `ntp-interval` (2^N) is the interval when an AP receives the time information from the NTP server. For example, if the `ntp-interval` is set to 6, an AP receives the time information from the NTP server at every 2^6 , i.e. 128 seconds.

The APC provides a function for configuring the time configuration method of the AP.

Configuring Time Stamp type using CLI

- 1) Go to `configure` → `apc` → `ap-time-config` configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc# ap-time-config
WEC8500/configure/apc/ap-time-config#
```

- 2) Configure how to transmit the time information to an AP using ‘`ac-stamp`’ and configure the interval.
 - `mode ac-stamp`
 - `ac-stamp-interval [INTERVAL]`
- 3) To check the information, execute the ‘`show apc ap-time-config`’ command.

Configuring NTP type using CLI

- 1) Go to `configure` → `apc` → `ap-time-config` configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc# ap-time-config
WEC8500/configure/apc/ap-time-config#
```

- 2) Add the NTP server information to transmit to an AP. Maximum 10 NTP server information can be added. To delete the configured NTP server information, enter ‘`no`’ parameter in front of the command

- add-ntp [NTP_SERVER_ADDRESS]
 - no add-ntp [NTP_SERVER_ADDRESS]
 - ntp-interval [NUMBER]
- 3) Configure the method of transmitting the time information to an AP as 'ntp'.
 - mode ntp
 - 4) Use the 'show apc ap-time-config' command to check the configured information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, select <NTP> in the submenu, and then select a time setting mode of the AP (TimeStamp or NTP), timestamp interval, and NTP polling interval. Also, you can add/remove NTP server from which to fetch time access information for the AP.

NTP > AP	
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>	
MODE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TimeStamp <input type="radio"/> NTP
STAMP INTERVAL	7200
NTP POLLING INTERVAL	6
<input type="text" value="IP address"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	NO
AP NTP SERVER	
No data	

Figure 74. AP Time Synchronization Configuration Options

4.2.4 AP Configuration



NOTE

The management interface of APC must be configured for the connection between APC and W-EP AP.

4.2.4.1 Configuring MAC address

Configuration using CLI

To configure AP information, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → AP configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap [ap profile name]
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1#
```

If there exists the same AP when entering [ap profile name], you are guided to the mode where operator can configure the AP. If there is no same AP, the new AP information is created.

- 2) Register the MAC address of the AP.
 - profile mac [MAC_ADDRESS]
- 3) To check the information of a configured AP, use the ‘show ap summary config’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> menu in the sub-menus.

- 1) Click the <Add> button.
- 2) Set AP PROFILE NAME and MAC ADDRESS and click the <Apply> button.

AP PROFILE NAME	ap_1
MAC ADDRESS	00:16:32:ff:8e:2b

Figure 75. Adding Access Points

4.2.4.2 Configuring AP Profile

Configuration using CLI

To configure an AP profile configuration, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → AP configuration → AP profile mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_1
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1# profile
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1/profile#
```

- 2) Configure the profile of an AP using the below command.
 - name [STRING]: Configures the name of an AP. If it is not entered, the 'AP_' + 'MAC address' is used as a name.
E.g. MAC address: f4:d9:fb:24:cb:a0
AP name: AP_f4d9fb24cba0
 - ap-mode [generalAp/rootAp/repeaterAp/snifferAp]: Configures the AP operation mode.
 - ap-stats-history-enable: Configures whether to enable the AP statistics history.
 - client-ip [IP_ADDRESS]: Configures the client IP address, if the AP operation mode is set to Sniffer AP.
 - console-enable: This configures whether to allow console access to the AP.
 - discovery [ap-followed/apc-referral/multicast/broadcast/DHCP]: Configures the discovery type of an AP to find APC.
 - ap-followed: Finds the APC using the discovery type and discovery list configured in an AP.
 - apc-referral: Uses the APC list information configured in an APC as the discovery list
 - DHCP: Uses the APC list information that is received through DHCP option 138 (IPv4) or option 52 (IPv6) as the discovery list.
 - auto: Discovery type is automatically changed by the AP for automatic connection to the APC.
 - discovery-interval [INTERVAL]: Configures the time waiting for a CAPWAP discovery response message (unit: seconds)
 - dtls-policy: Configures the DTLS Policy of an AP.
 - echo-interval [INTERVAL]: Configures the time when an AP transmits an echo request to the joined APC (Unit: seconds)
 - echo-retransmit-interval [INTERVAL]: Waiting time to retransmit an echo request message if there is no reply. The APC configures the echo timeout as much as two times of echo-interval. If the APC cannot receive an echo message from an AP until two times of echo-interval is elapsed, the APC assumes that the AP is down (Unit: seconds)

- edge-ap: Configures whether to enable the Edge AP function.
- edge-ap-opmode: Smart Handover is enabled as operation mode of the edge AP. In RSSI mode, handover is determined by looking up the RSSI value. In Force mode, handover is performed by force.
- edge-ap-threshold: Configures a threshold value for performing smart handover at the edge AP (range: -60 to -100 dBm, default: -80 dBm).
- edge-ap-window: Configures a window value for performing smart handover at the edge AP (range: 200-1000 ms, default: 200 ms).
- fragment-size [SIZE]: Configures a fragment size based on MTU to prevent the fragmentation of a CAPWAP packet that is transmitted by an AP to the APC.
- ip-mode [dhcp/static/ap]: Configures the IP address of an AP to DHCP, Static or AP Followed.
 - dhcp: Configures the AP IP operation type to DHCP
 - static: Configures the AP IP operation type to static
 - ap: Operates with an IP configured in an AP
- led-config: Configures LED on/off setting of the AP.
 - on: Sets LED of the AP on.
 - off: Sets LED of the AP off.
 - off-time: Sets LED of the AP off only for specific hours.
- local-bridging: Configures WLAN-VLAN Mapping of the Local Switching WLAN, ACL, and Pre-Authentication ACL of Captive Portal for each remote AP.
 - vlan-id: Configures a VLAN ID to allocate to the Local Switching WLAN.
 - acl-name: Configures an ACL name to allocate to the Local Switching WLAN for packet allowance/blocking.
 - pre-auth-name: Configures a Pre-Authentication ACL name for Captive Portal operation of the Local Switching WLAN.
- location [STRING]: Configures the information of location where an AP is installed.
- mac [MAC_ADDRESS]: Configures the MAC address of an AP
- max-echo-retransmit [COUNT]: Configures the maximum number of retransmission times of an echo request message.
- max-retransmit [COUNT]: Configures the maximum number of retransmission times of a CAPWAP control message.
- name [STRING]: Configures an AP name.
- native-vlanId [VLAN_ID]: Configures the native VLAN in an AP.
- primary-apc [APC_AME]: Configures the name of a primary APC.
- secondary-apc [APC_AME]: Configures the name of a secondary APC.
- tertiary-apc [APC_AME]: Configures the name of a tertiary APC. The WEC8050 model does not support the tertiary-apc function.
- repeater-whitelist [MAC ADDRESS]: Adds the Repeater AP Whitelist.
- report-interval [INTERVAL]: Configures the time interval for an AP to transmit the description error to the APC (Unit: seconds)
- retransmit-interval [INTERVAL]: Configures the waiting time until the AP retransmits a CAPWAP control message when there is no reply from the APC (unit: seconds)

- ssh-enable: Configures whether to enable the SSH server of an AP.
- static-ip [IP_ADDRESS] [NETMASK] [GATEWAY]: Configures the static IP address of an AP.
- statistics-timer [TIMER]: Configures the time interval of transmitting the statistics information provided by CAPWAP (unit: seconds)
- telnet-enable: Configures whether to enable the telnet server of an AP.
- time-config: Configure the timezone per AP.
- vlan-support: Configures whether to enable the native VLAN of an AP.

3) To check the information of a configured AP profile, use the 'show ap detail [AP_NAME]' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> → AP selection → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

The setting options in the General tab are as follows. Click the <Apply> button to apply the settings.

Access Points > General	
AP PROFILE NAME	ap_1
AP NAME	PV-77-104
AP GROUP NAME	test1
REMOTE AP GROUP NAME	test
AP MODE ¹	General AP
MAC ADDRESS	f4:d9:fb:24:2d:c1
MAP LOCATION	
LOCATION	
IP ADDRESS	0.0.0.0
IP ADDRESS POLICY	<input type="radio"/> DHCP <input checked="" type="radio"/> AP Priority (AP Followed) <input type="radio"/> Static IP
IP ADDRESS	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
NETMASK	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
GATEWAY	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
DISCOVERY TYPE ²	AP Followed <small>Current Discovery Type : Static</small>
ADMIN STATUS	Up
OPER STATUS	Down
PRIMARY CONTROLLER NAME ³	APC101 (10.10.10.10)
SECONDARY CONTROLLER NAME ³
TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME ³

Figure 76. AP Profile Setting (1)

- AP NAME: AP name
- AP GROUP NAME: Indicates name of the AP GROUP to which the AP belongs.
- REMOTE AP GROUP NAME: Indicates name of the REMOTE AP GROUP to which the AP belongs.
- AP MODE: AP operational mode (General AP/Root AP/Repeater AP/Sniffer AP)
- MAC ADDRESS: Cannot be changed to the MAC address of an AP.

- MAP LOCATION
 - LOCATION: Information of location where an AP is installed
 - IP ADDRESS: IP address of AP
 - IP ADDRESS POLICY: IP address mode
 - DISCOVERY TYPE: AP discovery type
 - ADMIN STATUS: AP administrative status
 - OPER STATUS: Current AP operational status
 - PRIMARY CONTROLLER NAME, SECONDARY CONTROLLER NAME, TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME: Redundancy mode
- For WEC8050, the TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME is not supported.

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> → AP → <Advanced> menu in the sub-menus.

The setting options in the Advance tab are as follows. Fill in each item and click the <Apply> button to apply the settings.

<input type="button" value="Back"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/>	
AP PROFILE NAME	ap_1
AP NAME	AP_f4d9fb36d8af
ECHO INTERVAL (SEC) ¹	<input type="text" value="30"/>
MAX DISCOVERY INTERVAL (SEC) ²	<input type="text" value="20"/>
REPORT INTERVAL (SEC) ³	<input type="text" value="120"/>
STATISTICS TIMER (SEC) ⁴	<input type="text" value="120"/>
RETRANSMIT INTERVAL (100MS) ⁵	<input type="text" value="5"/>
MAX RETRANSMIT ⁶	<input type="text" value="5"/>
ECHO RETRANSMIT INTERVAL (SEC) ⁷	<input type="text" value="3"/>
MAX ECHO RETRANSMIT ⁸	<input type="text" value="5"/>
TELNET ⁹	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="text" value="50023"/>
SSH ¹⁰	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="text" value="50022"/>
CONSOLE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
DTLS ¹¹	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
LED	<input type="text" value="On"/> <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> ~ <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/>
EDGE AP	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
EDGE AP OPERATION MODE	<input type="text" value="RSSI"/>
SMHO THRESHOLD (DBM)	<input type="text" value="-80"/>
SMHO WINDOW SIZE (MS)	<input type="text" value="300"/>
COUNTRY CODE	<input type="text" value="North America(US)"/>
ENVIRONMENT	<input type="text" value="Both"/>
TIME ZONE	<input type="text" value="Asia/Seoul"/>

VLAN

VLAN SUPPORT ¹²	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
NATIVE VLAN ID ¹³	<input type="text" value="0"/>

AirMove

CONFIG PRIORITY	<input type="radio"/> AP <input checked="" type="radio"/> AP Group
SCAN TRIGGER LEVEL (DBM)	<input type="text" value="-70"/>
SCANNING TIME FOR ONE CHANNEL (MS)	<input type="text" value="5"/>
SERVICE TIME DURING SCANNING (MS)	<input type="text" value="100"/>
SCANNING INTERVAL TIME (MS)	<input type="text" value="1000"/>
NUMBER OF PROBE REQUESTS	<input type="text" value="2"/>
NUMBER OF SCANNING CHANNELS	<input type="text" value="4"/>
VALUE OF STATION ROAM DELTA (DBM)	<input type="text" value="15"/>

Figure 77. AP Profile Setting (2)

4.2.4.3 AP Mode Configuration

Configuration using CLI

To configure AP mode, execute the command as follows.

- 1) Go to configure → AP configuration → AP profile mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_1
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1# profile
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1/profile#
```

- 2) Configure the AP mode.
 - ap-mode [MODE]

Parameter	Description
MODE	AP operation mode (generalAp/rootAp/repeaterAp/snifferAp) - generalAp: Typical operation mode. Default value. - rootAp: AP mode where a repeater AP can be connected. - repeaterAp: AP mode that is connected to a wireless area and the APC through the root AP. - snifferAp: AP mode where the packets operating in a wireless environment can be captured.

- 3) To check the information of a configured AP, use the ‘show ap detail [AP_NAME]’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> → AP selection → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

After selecting the AP MODE NAME item, click the <Apply> button to apply the configuration.

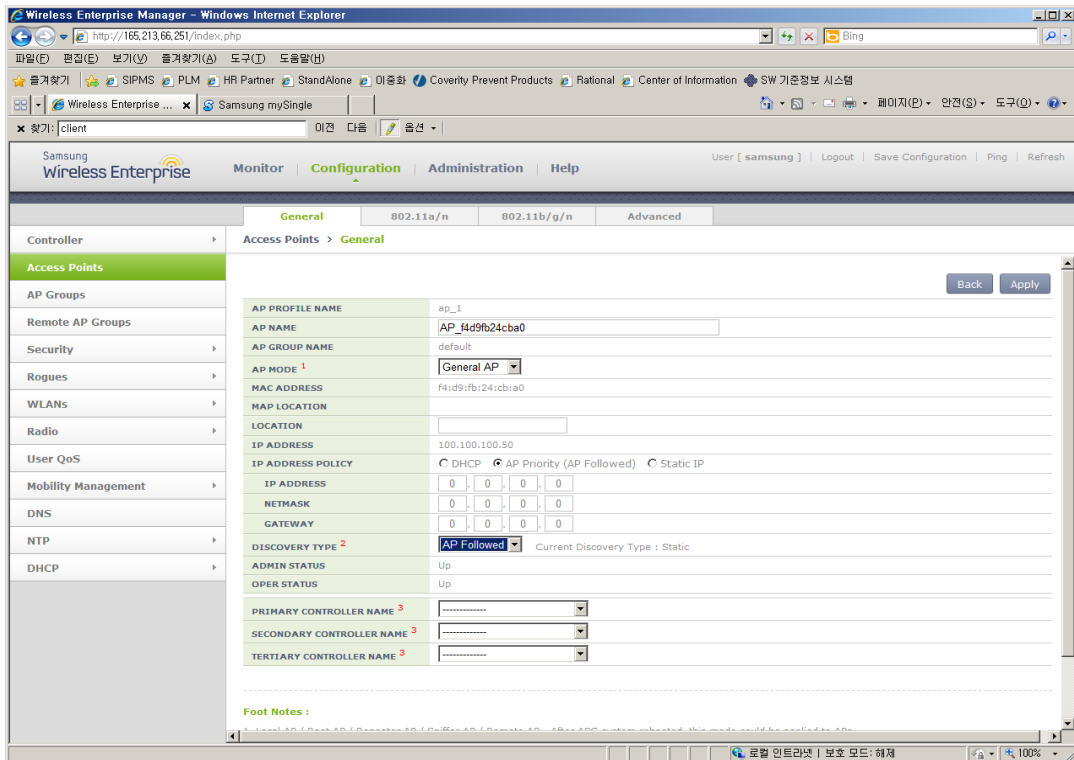


Figure 78. AP mode configuration

4.2.4.4 AP CLI Access Account

The APC operator can add or remove account information relating to the AP CLI. When the APC is first installed, a default account is provided (id: root, password: samsung).

Up to three AP CLI accounts can be added, and at least one account must be configured.

Therefore, if there is only one remaining account, it cannot be deleted.

(* While each account may be in any of the three available levels (Administrator/Operator/Monitor), there are currently no functional differences for the APs.)

Configuration using CLI

Execute the following commands to configure the AP access account.

- 1) Go to configure → APC mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc #
```

- 2) Add an AP CLI account.
 - ap-account [ID] [PASSWORD] [LEVEL]

Parameter	Description
ID	This is the ID of the AP CLI account. Only an alphanumeric value of up to eight characters can be entered.
Password	This is the password of the AP CLI account. Only an alphanumeric value of up to eight characters can be entered.
Level	This is the level of the AP CLI account. Available values are administrator/operator/monitor.

- 3) An account can be deleted by entering the 'no' parameter as shown below.
 - no ap-account [ID]
- 4) Use the 'show apc ap-account' command to retrieve the AP configuration information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration>, and then select <Local Management Users> → AP in the submenu. Click the 'Add' or 'Delete' button to add or delete the AP CLI account.



Figure 79. AP CLI Account Add/Remove Window

4.2.4.5 AP SNMP Agent Configuration

The APC operator can configure SNMP Agent settings for all APs.

Configuration using CLI

Execute the following commands to configure the SNMP Agent settings of the AP.

- 1) Go to configure → snmp → ap mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# snmp
WEC8500/configure/snmp# ap
WEC8500/configure/snmp/ap#
```

- 2) Configure the snap agent information of the AP.

Enable/disable SNMP of the AP.

- enable or no enable

Configure the SNMP port number of the AP.

- Port [PORT NUMBER]

Configure the Read Only Community Name of the AP.

- ro-community [COMMUNITY NAME]

Configure the Write Only Community Name of the AP.

- rw-community [COMMUNITY NAME]

Configure the user information of the AP.

- Use r[USER NAME] [AUTHENTICATION TYPE] [AUTHENTICATION KEY]
[PRIVATE PROTOCOL] [PRIVATE KEY]

Parameter	Description
PORT NUMBER	This is the SNMP port number.
COMMUNITY NAME	This is the SNMP Read Only or Write Only Community name.
USER NAME	This is the SNMP user name.
AUTHENTICATION TYPE	This is the SNMP authentication type. Either of the following two can be selected: - MD5 - SHA
AUTHENTICATION KEY	A number in the range of 8 to 20 can be entered.
PRIVATE PROTOCOL	Either of the following two can be selected: - DES - AES

Parameter	Description
PRIVATE KEY	A number in the range of 8 to 20 can be entered.

- Use the 'show snmp ap' command to retrieve the agent information configured for the AP.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Administration>, select <AP> in the submenu, and then select <v1/v2c Community> or <v3 User> to configure the SNMP agent information.

SNMP > AP > v1/v2c Community	
SNMP AGENT	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
PORT	161
READ COMMUNITY NAME	0
WRITE COMMUNITY NAME	0

Figure 80. AP SNMP v1/v2c Community Configuration Window

SNMP > AP > v3 User	
NAME	0
AUTH PROTOCOL	MD5
AUTH KEY	• [red exclamation mark icon]
PRIV PROTOCOL	---
PRIV KEY	• [red exclamation mark icon]

Figure 81. AP v3 User Configuration Window

4.2.5 Information Management

The APC manages the history statistics information, real-time interface statistics information, and tech support information of the AP.

AP History Statistics

The AP transmits the interface (WAN and WLAN) and CPU load/memory usage statistics information collected for 5 min. to the APC. The APC forwards the information to the WEM via FTP. If the APC does not interoperate with the WEM, the APC stores the information for 3 days.

AP real-time statistics

If the APC requests the interface information to an AP, the AP transmits the interface information (WAN and WLAN) to the APC at every 5 second and the APC stores the information in its internal DB. An operator can retrieve the information by using CLI or WEC.

AP Tech Support

If there occurs a problem with a specific AP, an operator can download the Tech Support information from the AP. Execute the following command to use the function.

The Tech Support from an AP includes the following information.

- System log message file
- System crash information file
- System report files (status/configuration information)
- Core file used to check application malfunctioning

4.2.5.1 History Statistics Information

To check the history statistics information relay status of an AP, use the 'show ap stats-history' command.

4.2.5.2 Real-time Interface Statistics Information

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → AP configuration.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_1
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1#
```

- 2) Configure to make real-time interface statistics information updated periodically.

```
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1# get-if-stats
```

- 3) To check the interface statistics information of an AP, use the 'show ap if-stats [AP_NAME]' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Monitor> and then select the <Statistics> → <AP Ports> menu in the sub-menus.

As shown below, you can retrieve the real-time interface statistics of the AP.

Select an item in the list, and then you can check detail information.

AP PROFILE NAME	AP NAME	MAC ADDRESS	IP ADDRESS	UP TIME	CAPWAP UP TIME	ADMIN STATUS	OPER STATUS	MAP LOCATION	MODE	MODEL	VERSION
ap_1	AP_f4d9fb24cba0	F4:d9:fb:24:cb:a0	100.100.100.50	1 day, 4 hour, 15 min, 2 sec	1 day, 3 hour, 14 min, 22 sec	Up	Up		General AP	WEA303i	1.4.3.R

Figure 82. AP Ports window

AP PROFILE NAME	ap_1
AP NAME	AP_f4d9fb24cba0
INTERFACE NAME	ap_1.wan
INTERFACE TYPE	Wan IF
RX UNICAST PACKETS	79,627
RX MULTICAST PACKETS	0
RX DISCARDED PACKETS	0
RX ERROR PACKETS	0
RX UNKNOWN PROTOCOL PACKETS	0
TX UNICAST PACKETS	181,379
TX MULTICAST PACKETS	0
TX DISCARDED PACKETS	0
TX ERROR PACKETS	0

Figure 83. AP Ports detail information window

4.2.5.3 Tech Support Information

Execute the below command to download the Tech Support information from an AP.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → AP configuration → tech-support of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap [ap profile name]
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1# tech-support
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1/tech-support#
```

- 2) Request the coredump file of the AP.

```
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1/tech-support# get-coredump (system / radio-
coredump)
```

- 3) Request the crashfile of the AP.

```
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1/tech-support# get-crash-file (system /
radio-coredump)
```

- 4) Request the log file of the AP.

```
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1/tech-support# get-log-file
```

- 5) Use 'show ap tech-support' command to check the Tech Support file information of APs. Operator can use FTP or sFTP to download Tech Support files.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Administrator> and then select the <Tech Support> → <AP Crash> menu in the sub-menus.

By clicking the profile name of an AP, operator can download the Tech Support file.

AP PROFILE NAME	AP NAME	MODEL	VERSION	MAC ADDRESS	IP ADDRESS	MODE	ADMIN STATUS	OPERATIONAL STATUS	MAP LOCATION
ap_1	AP_f4d9fb24cba0	WEA303i	1.4.3.R	f4:d9:fb:24:cb:a0	100.100.100.50	General AP	Up	Up	

Figure 84. AP Tech Support Information Receiving Window

4.2.6 Outdoor AP Configuration

The APC system provides outdoor AP connection diagnostic functions for outdoor APs. The AP connection diagnostics function checks ping status of outdoor APs and displays the results on the operator's monitor.

Procedure of using the outdoor AP connection diagnostics function is as follows:

- 1) The operator creates/deletes outdoor APWEC using CLI.
- 2) The APC system periodically pings the outdoor AP to check the network connection of the AP and stores the results.
- 3) The operator uses the WEC, WEM or CLI to determine network connection status of the outdoor AP.

Concerning outdoor AP count:

- 1) Outdoor APs are not included in the AP count of the APC license.
- 2) Outdoor APs are not included in the ordinary AP count.
- 3) The maximum up-ported outdoor AP count is 300 for the WEC8500 model and 75 for the WEC8050 model.
- 4) The APC system can retrieve the total/up/down outdoor AP count using the WEC or CLI.

4.2.6.1 Outdoor AP Addition/Removal

The APC system allows creation/deletion of outdoor AP information using the WEC or CLI.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Create or delete an AP. Use the 'no' parameter in front of the command to delete an outdoor AP.
 - outdoor-ap [PROFILE_NAME] [MAC_ADDRESS] [IP_ADDRESS]
 - no outdoor-ap [PROFILE_NAME]
- 3) Create or delete an outdoor AP. Use the 'no' parameter in front of the command to delete an outdoor AP.
- 4) Use the 'show ap summary' command to check the outdoor AP information.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> menu in the sub-menus. To create an outdoor AP, click <Add>, select <3rd Party Outdoor AP>, enter AP PROFILE NAME, MAC ADDRESS, and IP ADDRESS, and then select <Apply>.

AP PROFILE NAME	outdoorAp	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3rd Party Outdoor AP
MAC ADDRESS	f4 : d9 : fb : 24 : 30 : 01	
IP ADDRESS	10 . 231 . 107 . 22	

Figure 85. Outdoor AP Create Window

4.2.7 AP Package Upgrade

Configuration using CLI (Upgrade Function)

To manage the AP upgrade function, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → AP configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_1
```

- 2) Request the image file of an AP to upgrade.

```
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1# upgrade-request weafama_1.2.4.R.bin

WARNING: AP will be upgrade.
Are you sure you want to continue? (y/n) : y
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1#
```

- 3) To check the upgrade file information of the requested AP, use the following command.

```
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1# show ap upgrade list

/* (RC/FR/RC) : RetryCount/FailReason/RebootCause
/* Pri       : VersionPriority (MD-model,A-AP config)
AP_ID Model Version(config/current) Status(RC/FR/RC) Pri force
  1   WEA302i 1.2.4.R/ 1.2.4.R          Success( 0/ 0/146) AP No
```

Configuration using CLI (Upgrade environment)

To configure AP upgrade related environment, the following command is provided.
First of all, go to the configure → AP-all → upgrade mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap-all
WEC8500/configure/ap-all# upgrade
WEC8500/configure/ap-all/upgrade#
```

[select-package]

This command configures a package to use during AP upgrade.

- select-package [UPGRADE_TYPE] [FILE_NAME]

Parameter	Description
UPGRADE_TYPE	Configures upgrade type (default/quick-upgrade/predownload) - default: AP image that is referred to during provision upgrade. - quick-upgrade: AP image that is referred to for entire AP upgrade upon an operator's request. - predownload: AP image that is referred to download AP image to AP during entire AP upgrade.
FILE_NAME	Image file name that will be used for AP upgrade

[target]

During entire upgrade, you can select whether to maintain individual configured AP version of an AP or perform upgrade.

- Target [AP UPGRADE TARGET]

Parameter	Description
UPGRADE TARGET	Upgrade target (all/ keeping-individual) - all: Perform upgrade for all the APs. (default) - keeping-individual: While maintaining individually configured ap version, perform upgrade for the rest APs.

[transfer-protocol]

This command selects a transmission protocol that is used to transmit the package file of an AP from the WEC8500 to the AP.

- Transfer-protocol [AP TRANSFER MODE]

Parameter	Description
TRANSFER_MODE	File transmission protocol (ftp/sftp) - ftp: ftp is used for file transmission. - sftp: sftp is used for file transmission.

[max-download]

This command configures the maximum number of simultaneous downloads when transmitting the package file of an AP from the APC to the AP.

- Max-download [COUNT]

Parameter	Description
COUNT	Maximum number of simultaneous downloads of AP image file (range: 1-50, default: 10)

[max-retry]

This command configures maximum number of re-attempts when AP upgrade is failed.

- Max-retry [COUNT]

Parameter	Description
COUNT	Maximum number of AP upgrade re-attempts (range: 1-10, default: 3)

[start]

This command provides the entire AP upgrade function.

- start [UPGRADE_TYPE]

Parameter	Description
UPGRADE_TYPE	Configures upgrade type (quick-upgrade/predownload) - quick-upgrade: Perform entire ap upgrade upon an operator's request. - predownload: Download ap image to ap first during entire ap upgrade.

If you perform package upgrade after configuring AP upgrade type to predownload, restart all the APs in the following methods.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap-all
WEC8500/configure/ap-all# reboot upgrade
```

[stop]

This command provides the function of stopping the image upgrade of all the APs.

- stop

[show ap upgrade]

To check the upgrade information of an AP, use the following command.

- show ap upgrade summary

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Administrator> and then select <Package Upgrade> → <AP> menu in the sub menu.

You can perform AP upgrade in the AP Upgrade tab and configure upgrade related environment in the Advanced tab.

[AP Upgrade tab]

AP Upgrade tab upgrades all the APs or a specific AP.

Current Download: 0 Wait AP Count: 0

AP NAME	AP GROUP	MODEL	IP ADDRESS	CAPWAP STATUS	ACTIVE VERSION	OTHER VERSION	CONFIG VERSION	SCOPE	FORCE UPGRADE	UPGRADE STATUS	FAIL REASON
AP_f4d9fb24d2c0	group2	WEA302i	18.1.1.2	RUN	1.2.5.R	1.2.0.R	1.2.5.R	Individual	True	Upgrade Success	Success
AP_f4d9fb24cfc0	default		0.0.0.0	IDLE			1.2.0.R	Individual	-	None	Success

Figure 86. AP upgrade

The procedure of entire AP upgrade is as follows:

- 1) In the AP Upgrade window, click the <Global> button.
- 2) The <Global> area is displayed on the window. After configuring each item, click the <Apply> button.

Global

SCOPE: Quick Upgrade Predownload Abort

TARGET AP: Keeping individual setting

SELECT AP PACKAGE: weafama_1.2.5.R.bin

Family: weafama
Version: 1.2.5.R
Build Date: Sat Dec 15 06:00:18 KST 2012
Size: 35934336
CRC: 6b34e4a8

Current Download: 0 Wait AP Count: 0

AP NAME	AP GROUP	MODEL	IP ADDRESS	CAPWAP STATUS	ACTIVE VERSION	OTHER VERSION	CONFIG VERSION	SCOPE	FORCE UPGRADE	UPGRADE STATUS	FAIL REASON
AP_f4d9fb24d2c0	group2	WEA302i	18.1.1.2	RUN	1.2.5.R	1.2.0.R	1.2.5.R	Individual	True	Upgrade Success	Success
AP_f4d9fb24cfc0	default		0.0.0.0	IDLE			1.2.0.R	Individual	-	None	Success

Figure 87. AP upgrade-global

- SCOPE: Selects upgrade method. To make the AP working as the package immediately after upgrade, select Quick Upgrade. To download the package to the AP, select the Predownload menu.
 - TARGET AP: Select an AP target to upgrade. If you select <Keeping individual setting>, an AP that is configured as individual is excluded from upgrade.
 - SELECT AP PACKAGE: Selects an AP package to upgrade.
- 3) If the SCOPE setup is Predownload upgrade, you must restart the AP once download is completed. After selecting the <Administration> → <Reboot> → <AP> menu, select Reboot All with Upgrade to restart the AP.

To upgrade a specific AP, follow the below procedure.

- 1) In the AP Upgrade window, click the <Individual> button.
- 2) The individual area is displayed on the window. After configuring each item, click the <Apply> button.

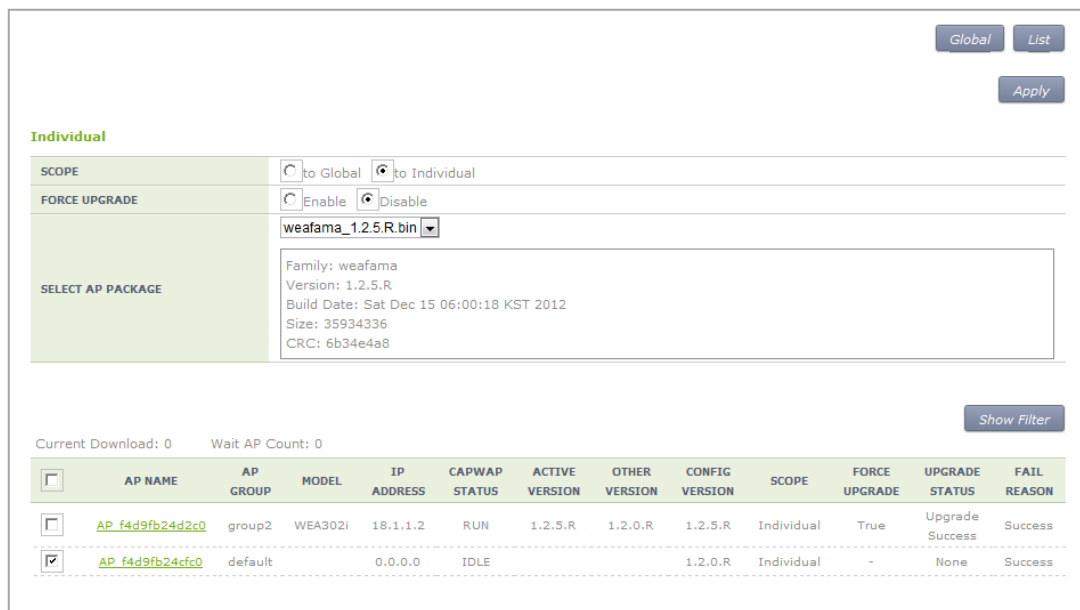


Figure 88. AP upgrade-individual

- SCOPE: Selects upgrade method. The <to individual> upgrades the selected AP to a specific package and the <to global> makes a select AP working as global.
- FORCE UPGRADE: Enable or disable
- SELECT AP PACKAGE: Selects an AP package to upgrade..

[Advanced tab]

Configures AP upgrade related environment settings.

TRANSFER MODE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP
MAX DOWNLOAD	10
MAX RETRY	3
DEFAULT AP PACKAGE	wea302_1.2.0.R.bin Current ▼

Figure 89. AP upgrade-advanced

- **TRANSFER MODE:** Selects a protocol that transmits an AP package.
- **MAX DOWNLOAD:** Configures maximum number of sessions that can be downloaded simultaneously.
- **MAX RETRY:** Configures maximum number of re-attempts when AP upgrade is failed.
- **DEFAULT AP PACKAGE:** Select an AP package that will be used for automatic upgrade during AP joint.

4.2.8 Remote AP Package Upgrade

APs in a remote group can be upgraded by downloading an AP package from a specific AP. This is useful for efficient management of APC-AP bandwidth.

A master AP can be selected for each AP package model. After downloading an AP package from the APC, the master AP allows the AP package to be downloaded to other APs in the remote group.

The operator can manage AP upgrade of the APs in the remote group by checking the AP package download status in the remote group and performing reboot and upgrade.

4.2.8.1 Activating Upgrade

The operator can enable/disable the AP upgrade in the remote group.

When the AP upgrade is enabled, version priority in AP upgrade status changes to Remote.

Configuration using CLI

Example:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# remote-ap-group rUpgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade# upgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# enable

WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# no enable
```

CLI for checking configuration:

```

WEC8500 # show remote-ap-group upgrade config rUpgrade

===== Remote Ap Group Upgrade Config =====

Group Name           : rUpgrade
Enable               : Enable
Type                 : Default
Mode                 : FTP
Path                 : package/ap
PortNum              : 21
MAXretries           : 3
ForceOption          : Disable

weafama              : (APID:0, IP:0.0.0.0)
                    : ()
weafamb              : (APID:0, IP:0.0.0.0)
                    : ()

WEC8500# show remote-ap-group upgrade list rUpgrade

/* (RC/FR/RC) : RetryCount/FailReason/RebootCause
AP_ID Model Version(config/current) Status(RC/FR/RC) MasterAp
1 WEA303i Remote/1.7.0.U2 None( 0/ 0/128) -
2 WEA312i Remote/1.7.0.U2 None( 0/ 0/128) -
3 WEA303i Remote/1.7.0.U1 None( 0/ 0/128) -
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

Administration > Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group

Example:

Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group

Multi Set Enable ¹ Disable Start Stop Upgrade & Reboot ²

Total Entry : 5

<input type="checkbox"/>	REMOTE AP GROUP NAME	REMOTE AP UPGRADE	REMOTE AP UPGRADE STATUS	AP COUNT
<input type="checkbox"/>	remotetestgroup01	Disable	-	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	remotetestgroup02	Disable	-	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	wec1	Disable	-	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	wec2	Disable	-	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	rUpgrade	Enable	-	3

¹

Foot Notes :

- When Enable for Remote AP Upgrade, AP package will be received from Master AP.
- All APs reboot in Remote Group, and will be working upgrade version.

Figure 90. Remote AP Group Upgrade Activation_1

Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group > AP Upgrade

Start Stop Back Apply

REMOTE AP GROUP NAME	rUpgrade	
REMOTE AP UPGRADE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	
REMOTE AP UPGRADE STATUS	-	
FORCE UPGRADE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	
SELECT AP PACKAGE	300 series (weafama)	400 series (weafamb)
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
CURRENT AP PACKAGE	300 series (weafama)	400 series (weafamb)
	Package Version : 1.7.0.U	Package Version : -
	Package File Name : weafama_1.7.0.U.bin	Package File Name : -

Figure 91. Remote AP Group Upgrade Activation_2

4.2.8.2 Master AP Configuration (Optional)

The operator can configure the master AP for AP upgrade in the remote group. If none is configured, a master AP is automatically selected.

Configuration using CLI

Example:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# remote-ap-group rUpgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade# upgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# select-masterAP
ap_1

WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# delete-masterAP
[weafama/weafamb]
```

CLI for checking configuration:

```
WEC8500# show remote-ap-group upgrade config rUpgrade

===== Remote Ap Group Upgrade Config =====

Group Name           : rUpgrade
Enable               : Enable
Type                 : Default
Mode                 : FTP
Path                 : package/ap
PortNum              : 21
MAXretries           : 3
ForceOption          : Disable

weafama              : ap_1 (APID:1, IP:10.10.10.160)
                    : ()
weafamb              : (APID:0, IP:0.0.0.0)
                    : ()
```

```

WEC8500# show remote-ap-group upgrade list rUpgrade

/* (RC/FR/RC)      : RetryCount/FailReason/RebootCause
AP_ID  Model  Version(config/current)  Status (RC/FR/RC)  MasterAp
  1    WEA303i   Global/1.7.0.U2          None ( 0/ 0/128)   MasterApCfg
  2    WEA312i   Global/1.7.0.U2          None ( 0/ 0/146)   -
  3    WEA303i   Global/1.7.0.U1          None ( 0/ 0/146)   -
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

Administration > Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group

Example:

Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group > AP Upgrade

CURRENT AP PACKAGE	300 series (weafama) Package Version : 1.7.0.U Package File Name : weafama_1.7.0.U.bin	400 series (weafamb) Package Version : - Package File Name : -
---------------------------	--	--

Current Filter : None Change

Total Entry : 3

AP NAME	MODEL	IP ADDRESS	CAPWAP STATUS	ACTIVE VERSION	OTHER VERSION	SCOPE	UPGRADE STATUS	FAIL REASON	MASTER STATUS
AP_0000aa171717	WEA303i	10.10.10.160	RUN	1.7.0.U	1.7.0.U2	RemoteAP	Upgrade Success	Success	Master
AP_f4d9fb24cba0	WEA312i	10.10.10.122	RUN	1.7.0.U	1.7.0.U2	RemoteAP	Upgrade Success	Success	
AP_0000aa161616	WEA303i	10.10.10.99	RUN	1.7.0.U	1.7.0.U1	RemoteAP	Upgrade Success	Success	

Figure 92. Checking Master AP Configuration

Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group > AP Upgrade

Back Master Select

General		Version Information	
AP PROFILE NAME	ap_1	ACTIVE VERSION	1.7.0.U
AP NAME	AP_0000aa171717	OTHER VERSION	1.7.0.U2
AP GROUP NAME	default	UPGRADE MODE	RemoteAP
IP ADDRESS	10.10.10.160	FORCED UPGRADE	True
MAC ADDRESS	00:00:aa:17:17:17	UPGRADE STATUS	Upgrade Success
MAP LOCATION		FAIL REASON	Success
LOCATION		CONFIGED VERSION	1.7.0.U2
AP MODE	Local AP	BOOT VERSION	FF21
ADMIN STATUS	Up	High Availability	
OPERATION STATUS	Up	PRIMARY CONTROLLER NAME	
CAPWAP STATUS	RUN	SECONDARY CONTROLLER NAME	
MODEL NAME	WEA303i	TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME	
SERIAL NUMBER	S123456789	Advanced	
UP TIME	18 min, 45 sec		
CAPWAP UP TIME	18 min, 15 sec		
LAST JOIN TIME	Wed Mar 5 20:20:48 2014		
REBOOT CAUSE	reboot after package upgrade		

Figure 93. Checking Master AP Configuration

4.2.8.3 AP Package Configuration

The operator can configure an AP package to upgrade in the remote group.

Configuration using CLI

Example:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# remote-ap-group rUpgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade# upgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# select-package
weafama weafama_1.7.0.U.bin

WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade#delete-package
[weafama/weafamb]
```

CLI for checking configuration:

```
WEC8500# show remote-ap-group upgrade config rUpgrade

===== Remote Ap Group Upgrade Config =====

Group Name       : rUpgrade
Enable           : Enable
Type             : Default
Mode             : FTP
Path             : package/ap
PortNum          : 21
MAXretries       : 3
ForceOption      : Disable

weafama          : ap_1 (APID:1, IP:10.10.10.160)
                 : weafama_1.7.0.U.bin (1.7.0.U)
weafamb          : (APID:0, IP:0.0.0.0)
                 : ()
```

Configuration using Web UI

Administration > Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group

Example:

Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group > AP Upgrade		
REMOTE AP GROUP NAME	rUpgrade	
REMOTE AP UPGRADE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	
REMOTE AP UPGRADE STATUS	-	
FORCE UPGRADE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	
SELECT AP PACKAGE	300 series (weafama)	400 series (weafamb)
	weafama_1.7.0.U1.bin	-----
Family: weafama Version: 1.7.0.U1 Build Date: Mon Mar 3 19:32:46 KST 2014 Size: 37712000 CRC: f1698883		
CURRENT AP PACKAGE	300 series (weafama) Package Version : 1.7.0.U Package File Name : weafama_1.7.0.U.bin	400 series (weafamb) Package Version : - Package File Name : -

Figure 94. AP Package Configuration

4.2.8.4 Starting AP Upgrade

The operator can start or stop AP upgrade in the remote group.

Configuration using CLI

Example:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# remote-ap-group rUpgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade# upgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# start

WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# stop
```

CLI for checking configuration:

```
WEC8500# show remote-ap-group upgrade config rUpgrade

===== Remote Ap Group Upgrade Config =====

Group Name      : rUpgrade
Enable          : Enable
Type            : Predownload
Mode            : FTP
```

```

Path           : package/ap
PortNum        : 21
MAXretries     : 3
ForceOption    : Disable

weafama        : ap_1 (APID:1, IP:10.10.10.160)
                : weafama_1.7.0.U.bin (1.7.0.U)
weafamb        : (APID:0, IP:0.0.0.0)
                : ( )

WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# show remote-ap-
group upgrade list rUpgrade

/* (RC/FR/RC) : RetryCount/FailReason/RebootCause
AP_ID Model    Version(config/current)  Status(RC/FR/RC)  MasterAp
  1  WEA303i Remote/1.7.0.U2  DownloadSuccess( 0/ 0/128) MasterApCfg
  2  WEA312i Remote/1.7.0.U2  DownloadSuccess( 0/ 0/146) -
  3  WEA303i Remote/1.7.0.U2  DownloadSuccess( 0/ 0/146) -
    
```

Configuration using Web UI

Administration > Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group

Example:

Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group > AP Upgrade

Start Stop Back Apply

REMOTE AP GROUP NAME: rUpgrade

REMOTE AP UPGRADE: Enable Disable

REMOTE AP UPGRADE STATUS: -

FORCE UPGRADE: Enable Disable

300 series (weafama) | 400 series (weafamb)

weafama_1.7.0.U1.bin | -----

SELECT AP PACKAGE

Family: weafama
Version: 1.7.0.U1
Build Date: Mon Mar 3 19:32:46 KST 2014
Size: 37712000
CRC: f1698883

CURRENT AP PACKAGE

300 series (weafama) | 400 series (weafamb)

Package Version : 1.7.0.U | Package Version : -

Package File Name : weafama_1.7.0.U.bin | Package File Name : -

Figure 95. Starting AP Upgrade

4.2.8.5 Restarting and Upgrading AP

After downloading the AP package, APs in the remote group are restarted so that they can run on the upgraded version.

Configuration using CLI

Example:

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# remote-ap-group rUpgrade
WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade# reboot upgrade
```

CLI for checking configuration:

```
WEC8500# show remote-ap-group upgrade config rUpgrade

===== Remote Ap Group Upgrade Config =====

Group Name           : rUpgrade
Enable               : Enable
Type                 : Default
Mode                 : FTP
Path                  : package/ap
PortNum              : 21
MAXretries           : 3
ForceOption          : Disable

weafama               : ap_1 (APID:1, IP:10.10.10.160)
                     : weafama_1.7.0.U.bin (1.7.0.U)
weafamb               : (APID:0, IP:0.0.0.0)
                     : ()

WEC8500/configure/remote-ap-group rUpgrade/upgrade# show remote-ap-
group upgrade list rUpgrade

/* (RC/FR/RC) : RetryCount/FailReason/RebootCause
AP_ID  Model  Version(config/current)  Status(RC/FR/RC)  MasterAp
  1    WEA303i  Remote/1.7.0.U           Success( 0/ 0/128) MasterApCfg
  2    WEA312i  Remote/1.7.0.U           Success( 0/ 0/146) -
  3    WEA303i  Remote/1.7.0.U           Success( 0/ 0/146) -
```

Configuration using Web UI

Administration > Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group

Example:

Package Upgrade > Remote AP Group

Total Entry : 5

¹

 ²

	REMOTE AP GROUP NAME	REMOTE AP UPGRADE	REMOTE AP UPGRADE STATUS	AP COUNT
<input type="checkbox"/>	remotetestaroup01	Disable	-	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	remotetestaroup02	Disable	-	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	wec1	Disable	-	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	wec2	Disable	-	0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	rUpgrade	Enable	-	3

1

Foot Notes :

1. When Enable for Remote AP Upgrade, AP package will be received from Master AP.
2. All APs reboot in Remote Group, and will be working upgrade version.

Figure 96. Restarting and Upgrading AP

CHAPTER 5. WLAN Management

This chapter describes how to create and configure WLAN that is the most fundamental basis for W-EP wireless LAN service.

5.1 WLAN Configuration

5.1.1 Basic WLAN Configuration

The WLAN profile helps configure and manage the WLAN connection service of an AP in the APC. To use WLAN service, it is necessary to basically configure AP group and interface group and specify Service Set Identifier (SSID).

Configuration using CLI

Go to the wlan configuration mode from the configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan [WLAN ID]
```

Parameter	Description
WLAN_ID	WLAN ID (range: 1-255)

The WLAN configuration procedures are as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1#
```

- 2) Add WLAN to an AP group.

Configure an AP group to which WLAN service will be provided. The AP group configuration is only possible in the AP group configuration mode instead of the wlan configuration mode. The below configuration allocates wlan 1 to the apg_01 AP group.



NOTE

A newly created WLAN is added to the 'default' AP group if the WLAN ID is in the range of 1-16. If its WLAN ID is 17 or above, the WLAN is not included in the AP group.

Maximum 16 WLANs can be allocated to each AP group.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap-group apg_01
WEC8500/configure/ap-group apg_01# add-wlan 1
```

- 3) Configure an interface group to which the WLAN service will be provided. Several VLAN interfaces can be added to an interface group, and the WLAN service is available only through the interface.
 - if-group [INTERFACE_GROUP_NAME]
- 4) Configure a SSID. The SSID is an ID used to connect to each wireless terminal to provide the WLAN service. Make sure to configure a SSID to use the WLAN service.
 - ssid [SSID_NAME]
- 5) Configure radio by selecting 2.4G, 5G or All (2.4G/5G).
 - radio [Radio ID: 1: 5 GHz, 2: 2.4 GHz, 3: ALL]
- 6) Configure whether to apply the WLAN service.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1#enable
```



NOTE

To apply the various WLAN services to multiple wireless terminals, create the WLAN service in a profile format. Once the WLAN service is started, make each AP use the WLAN service by downloading the profile.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <General> tab. In the screen, you can use various functions such as adding or deleting a WLAN.

	ID	PROFILE NAME	SSID	INTERFACE GROUP	RADIO AREA	ADMIN STATUS	SECURITY POLICIES
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	wlan1	test_wlan1	ifg_01	5GHz	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	wlan2	test_wlan2	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	wlan3	test_wlan3	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	wlan4	test_wlan4	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	wlan5	test_wlan5	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	wlan6	test_wlan6	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	wlan7	test_wlan7	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	wlan8	test_wlan8	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	wlan9	test_wlan9	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	wlan10	test_wlan10	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	wlan11	test_wlan11	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	wlan12	test_wlan12	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	wlan13	test_wlan13	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	wlan14	test_wlan14	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	wlan15	test_wlan15	ifg_01	All	Enable	None
<input type="checkbox"/>	16	wlan16	test_wlan111	ifg_01	All	Enable	None

Figure 97. WLAN basic configuration (1)

General
Security
Advanced

WLANs > WLANs > General

ID	1
PROFILE NAME	wlan1
SSID	<input type="text" value="apm_test"/>
AP GROUP LISTS	default
INTERFACE GROUP	<input type="text" value="ifg_apm_test"/>
RADIO AREA ¹	<input type="text" value="All"/>
CAPWAP TUNNEL MODE ²	<input type="text" value="802.3 Tunnel"/>
SUPPRESS SSID	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
AAA OVERRIDE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
MAX. ALLOWED STATIONS	<input type="text" value="127"/>
GUEST SERVICE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
ADMIN STATUS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable

Figure 98. WLAN basic configuration (2)

You can configure various functions such as interface group and SSID, etc.

The configurations available in the General tab are as follows:

- **INTERFACE GROUP:** Configures an interface group.
- **RADIO AREA:** Configures a radio area.
- **CAPWAP TUNNEL MODE/LOCAL VLAN:** Configures the local switching function.
- **SUPRESS SSID:** Enables or disables the function.
- **AAA OVERRIDE:** If the WLAN is enabled with the device authentication function using a AAA server, the AAA-override function can be enabled so that the user-specific settings configured in the AAA server are applied with priority over the APC settings.
- **MAXIMUM ALLOWED STATIONS:** Limits the number of users per WLAN.
- **GUEST SERVICE:** Enables or disables the Guest service.
- **ADMIN STATUS:** Enables or disables the function.

5.1.2 WLAN Additional Configuration

Each wireless terminal can receive a differentiated service according to the WLAN configuration. The procedure of configuring the WLAN additional function is as follows.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1
```

- 2) If the WLAN is enabled with the device authentication function using a AAA server, the AAA-override function can be enabled so that the user-specific settings configured in the AAA server are applied with priority over the APC settings.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1# aaa-override
```

- 3) Determine whether to configure the Guest service.
 - guest-flag
- 4) Configure a VLAN ID to use locally.
 - local-vlan [VLAN_ID]

Parameter	Description
VLAN_ID	VLAN ID (range: 1-4094)

- 5) Specify the service MAC type.
- mac-type [MAC_TYPE]

Parameter	Description
MAC_TYPE	- localMac: An AP itself provides data service. - splitMac: Provides data service through the APC.

- 6) Select a radio bandwidth to provide the WLAN service.
- radio [RADIO]

Parameter	Description
RADIO	- 1: 5 GHz - 2: 2.4 GHz - 3: Supports both 5/2.4 GHz

- 7) Select whether to provide the SSID as hidden. If it is set to 'hidden', the SSID is not found when other devices do searching.
- suppress-ssid
- 8) Select the tunnel mode.
- tunnel-mode [TUNNEL_MODE]

Parameter	Description
TUNNEL_MODE	- LocalBridging: Make all the user traffics are bridged at the AP. - 8023Tunnel: Make all the user traffics are transmitted in the 802.3 format (Not supported if the MAC type is split mac).

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. For more information about configuration, see '5.1 Basic WLAN Configuration'.

5.1.3 WLAN-based ACL Configuration

To configure ACL to apply to the WLAN service, define IP-based ACL first and then configure it to the WLAN.

Configuration using CLI

The procedures for configuration are as follows.

- 1) Before applying ACL, retrieve ACL that is configured as WLAN ACL.

```
WEC8500# show running-config network

fqm-mode
...
ip access-group wireless acl1
!
```

- 2) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1
```

- 3) Among retrieved ACLs, enter an ACL name to apply to the WLAN with the 'acl' command.
 - acl [ACL-NAME]
- 4) To check the configured ACL, use the 'show wlan detail' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <Advanced> tab.

PROFILE NAME	wlan1	Back	Apply
ACL RULE	acl1		
STATIC ADDRESS DISALLOWED	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
DHCP OVERRIDE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
DHCP SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0		
Apply			
WMM	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
DTIM	1		
STATION IDLE TIMEOUT (SEC)	300		
AMPDU	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
Apply			
VOIP FAILURE DETECT	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		

Figure 99. WLAN-based ACL configuration

- ACL RULE: Configures the WLAN-based ACL function.
- STATIC ADDRESS DISALLOWED
- DHCP OVERRIDE
- DHCP SERVER: Enter a DHCP server IP address.
- WMM: Configures the WiFi Multimedia (WMM) mode.
- DTIM: Enter a Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM) value (1-255).
- STATION IDLE TIMEOUT: Enter a station idle timeout value. The value range is 30-3600 and it must be the multiple of 15.
- VOIP FAILURE DETECT: Configures call failure detection.

5.1.4 Managing Root Service

To provide a wireless LAN service where cable installation is difficult, a W-EP AP can be configured as a repeater mode to relay wireless LAN traffics. To configure this kind of network, the Repeater AP and Root AP are required. The Repeater AP is working as a wireless terminal and the Root AP connects a Repeater AP to a wireless terminal for connection to the APC.

The root AP must be enabled with the repeater service to allow repeater AP connections.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → apc configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# apc
WEC8500/configure/apc#
```

- 2) Enable or disable the repeater service. The repeater service must be enabled for the repeater AP to connect to the root AP.
 - repeater-service: Enabled
 - no repeater-service: Disabled
- 3) Use the 'show wlan detail repeater' command to check the root WLAN settings.

```
WEC8500/configure/apc# show wlan detail repeater
```

[Changing to Root AP]

The procedure of changing a W-EP AP to a Root AP is as follows:

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

- 2) Check the registered AP list.

```
WEC8500/configure# show ap summary
```

- 3) Go to AP configuration mode to change to a Root AP.

```
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_1
```

- 4) Configure it to a Root AP.

```
WEC8500/ configure/ap ap_1# profile ap-mode rootAp
```

- 5) Restart the configured AP.

[Changing to Repeater AP]

The procedure of changing a W-EP AP to a Repeater AP is as follows:

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

- 2) Check the registered AP list.

```
WEC8500/configure# show ap summary
```

- 3) Go to AP configuration mode of an AP that will be changed to a Repeater AP.

```
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_2
```

- 4) Configure it to a Repeat AP.

```
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_2# profile ap-mode repeaterAp
```

- 5) Restart the configured AP.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <General> menu in the sub-menus. To enable repeater service, configure the INTERFACE GROUP in the Repeater Service of the window, select Enable in the SERVICE, and click the <Apply> button.

The screenshot shows the 'Controller > General' configuration page. It features two main sections: 'AP Management' and 'Repeater Service'. In the 'AP Management' section, the IP ADDRESS is set to 10.10.10.11 and the INTERFACE is set to vlan1.110. In the 'Repeater Service' section, the SERVICE is set to 'Enable'. There are 'Apply' buttons at the top right and bottom right of the configuration area.

Figure 100. Root service management (1)

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> → AP selection → <General> menu in the sub-menus. After selecting AP MODE item, click the <Apply> button and restart the AP.

The screenshot shows the 'Access Points > General' configuration page. It contains a table of configuration parameters. The 'AP MODE' is set to 'Root AP'. The 'DISCOVERY TYPE' is set to 'AP Follower'. The 'IP ADDRESS POLICY' is set to 'AP Priority (AP Follower)'. There are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons at the top right.

Parameter	Value
AP PROFILE NAME	ap_1
AP NAME	AP_f4d9fb24cba0
AP GROUP NAME	default
AP MODE ¹	Root AP
MAC ADDRESS	f4:d9:fb:24:cb:a0
MAP LOCATION	
LOCATION	
IP ADDRESS	100.100.100.50
IP ADDRESS POLICY	<input type="radio"/> DHCP <input checked="" type="radio"/> AP Priority (AP Follower) <input type="radio"/> Static IP
IP ADDRESS	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
NETMASK	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
GATEWAY	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
DISCOVERY TYPE ²	AP Follower (Current Discovery Type : Static)
ADMIN STATUS	Up
OPER STATUS	Up
PRIMARY CONTROLLER NAME ³	
SECONDARY CONTROLLER NAME ³	
TERTIARY CONTROLLER NAME ³	

Figure 101. Root service management (2)

5.2 Local Switching

The APC provides the local switching function to support a service to an individual network such as a branch office. The local switching function enables an AP to be connected to WAN for external connection in an individual network where the APC is not installed. The control packet of an AP and a wireless terminal is processed in the centralized APC and a general data packet is processed in an individual network. Therefore, if the tunnel mode of the WLAN is changed to local switching, part of the data packet forwarding process performed by the APC is performed by the AP.

The following AP functions must be configured in the WLAN which is configured for local switching:

- 1) WLAN-VLAN Mapping
 - The wireless device traffic connected to the configured local switching WLAN is forwarded by the AP with the configured VLAN tag.
- 2) ACL
 - Packet filtering ACL is performed for the wireless device traffic connected to the configured local switching WLAN.
- 3) Preauthentication ACL of Captive Portal
 - Web preauthentication packet forwarding ACL is processed for the wireless device traffic connected to the local switching WLAN configured for captive portal.

The functions above are activated only for the APs added to the remote AP group.

Configuration using CLI

The procedure of local switching configuration is as follows:

- 1) By referring to the 'Configuring Remote AP Group', add an AP to a remote AP group.
- 2) Enter into the configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI, and configure 'tunnel-mode' to 'local-bridging'.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1# tunnel-mode local-bridging
```

- tunnel-mode local-bridging
- 3) Enter into the configure → AP configuration mode of CLI, and configure a local Vlan ID per WLAN.

```

WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# ap ap_1
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1# profile
WEC8500/configure/ap ap_1/profile#
    
```

- local-bridging [WLAN_ID][VLAN_ID/ACL_NAME/PRE_AUTH_ACL_NAME]

Parameter	Description
WLAN_ID	WLAN ID (Range: 1-254) (available only for WLANs the tunnel-mode of which is local-bridging)
VLAN_ID	VLAN ID (Range: 1-4094)
ACL_NAME	ACL name to configure for the WLAN service (only for options set in IP ACL)
PRE_AUTH_ACL_NAME	ACL name to configure for pre-authentication of the WLAN (only for options set in IP ACL)

- 4) Operator can check the configuration information by executing the ‘show remote-ap-group summary’, ‘show wlan detail’, ‘show ap local-bridging [AP_PROFILE_NAME]’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

By referring to the ‘Configuring Remote AP Group’, add an AP to a remote AP group.

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <General> tab. After changing the ‘CAPWAP TUNNEL MODE’ to ‘Local Bridging’, click the <Apply> button.

ID	1
PROFILE NAME	wlan1
SSID	apm_test
AP GROUP LISTS	default
INTERFACE GROUP	ifg_01
RADIO AREA ¹	All
CAPWAP TUNNEL MODE ²	Local Bridging
SUPPRESS SSID	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
AAA OVERRIDE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
MAX. ALLOWED STATIONS	127
GUEST SERVICE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
ADMIN STATUS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable

Figure 102. Local Switching Configuration Window of WLAN

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> menu in the sub-menus. In the Access Points screen, select an AP to change and go to the <Remote AP> tab. Select a WLAN that is configured as local bridging, enter a VLAN ID/ACL/Pre-Auth. ACL, and click the <Add> button.

The screenshot shows a configuration window for WLAN allocation. At the top right is a 'Back' button. Below it are four input fields: 'WLAN' with a dropdown arrow, 'VLAN ID' with the value '0', 'ACL' with a dropdown arrow, and 'Pre-Auth. ACL' with a dropdown arrow. To the right of these fields are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below the form is a table with the following columns: NO., WLAN, VLAN ID, ACL, PRE-AUTH. ACL, and EDIT. The table is currently empty, with 'No data' displayed below the header row.

NO.	WLAN	VLAN ID	ACL	PRE-AUTH. ACL	EDIT
No data					

Figure 103. VLAN/ACL/Pre-Auth.ACL Configuration Window of WLAN Allocated to AP

5.3 Security and Authentication

The Samsung W-EP AP/APC supports the security and authentication function defined in the IEEE 802.11-based wireless LAN security standard and its main mechanism is as follows:

- Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP)
- Wi-Fi Protected Access Version 1 (WPA1), Wi-Fi Protected Access Version 2 (WPA2)
- Authentication type: Pre-Shared Key (PSK), 802.1X
- Encryption type: Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), AES-CCMP

When a new WLAN is added, the initial WLAN security configuration becomes all disabled. Therefore, an operator must configure the security function.

5.3.1 Initialization of WLAN Security Function

This is a procedure to disable WLAN, where the security function is configured, to the initial status.

Configuration using CLI

An example of initializing the security function of wlan 1 is show below.

- 1) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
```

- 2) After entering into the security configuration mode, use the 'setDefault' command to initialize the security configuration.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1# security
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# setDefault
```

- 3) After applying the changed configuration, exit the security configuration mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# apply
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# exit
```

- 4) To check configuration information, use the 'show wlan security summary' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <Security> → <L2> tab.

PROFILE NAME	wlan1	Back	Apply
L2 SECURITY TYPE ¹	None		
MAC FILTER	-----		

Figure 104. Initialization of WLAN security function

The configuration items available in the window are as follows.

Item		Description
PROFILE NAME		A WLAN configuration name is displayed.
L2 SECURITY TYPE		Layer2 security function type - None: Security function disabled (Select this to initialize the WLAN security function.) - Static WEP: Static WEP security function - 802.1x (Dynamic WEP): Dynamic WEP security function - Static WEP + 802.1x (Dynamic WEP): Static/Dynamic WEP security function - WPA + WPA2: WPA/WPA2 PSK/802.1x security function
WPA POLICY	WPA	WPA Version 1 function is enabled when selected
	ENCRYPTION TYPE	Encryption type - TKIP: TKIP type - CCMP: AES-CCMP type - Both: TKIP, AES-CCMP type
WPA2 POLICY	WPA2	The WPA Version 2 function is always enabled and cannot be changed.
	ENCRYPTION TYPE	The only supported encryption method is CCMP and this cannot be changed. - CCMP: AES-CCMP method
AUTH KEY MGMT	PSK/802.1x	Authentication key management type - PSK: PSK (shared key) authentication type - 802.1x: 802.1x authentication type through a RADIUS server
	PSK FORMAT	PSK key input type - ASCII: ASCII character string - HEX: Hexadecimal value
	PSK KEY	PSK key - 8-63 ASCII character string - 64-characters of hexadecimal value

Item		Description
PMK LIFETIME		PMK effective time (unit: s, range: 0-1000000, default: 43200)
EAPOL REAUTHENTICATION PERIOD		EAP re-authentication interval (unit: s, range: 0-100000, default: 0)
STATIC WEP	WEP KEY FORMAT	key input format - ASCII: ASCII character string - HEX: Hexadecimal value
	WEP KEY SIZE	Key length - 40: 40-bit (5-byte) - 104: 104-bit (13-byte)
STATIC WEP	WEP KEY INDEX	Key index (1-4)
	WEP KEY	key value
802.1X(DYNAMIC WEP)	WEP KEY SIZE	Key length - 40: 40-bit (5-byte) - 104: 104-bit (13-byte)

After selecting the L2 Security Type as None, click the <Apply> button.

5.3.2 WPA/WPA2 PSK Configuration

The WPA/WPA2 PSK, one of wireless LAN authentication types, can be used in a small size network where an authentication server is not installed.

The procedure of WPA/ WPA2 PSK configuration is as follows.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
```

- 2) Go to security configuration mode and initialize the configuration.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1# security
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# setDefault
```

- 3) Configure the WPA type.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# [WPA_TYPE]
```

Parameter	Description
WPA_TYPE	WPA type (wpa/wpa2): WPA Version 2 must be enabled at all times. - wpa: WPA Version 1 - wpa2: WPA Version 2

4) Configure the PSK key.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# psk [KEY_TYPE] [KEY_STRING]
```

Parameter	Description
KEY_TYPE	PSK key input format (ascii/hex) - ASCII: ASCII character string - HEX: Hexadecimal value
KEY_STRING	PSK key

5) Configure the encryption type.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# [WPA_TYPE] [ENC_TYPE]
```

Parameter	Description
WPA_TYPE	WPA type (wpa/wpa2): Use the same value as the WPA type configured before. WPA Version 2 must be enabled at all times. - wpa: WPA Version 1 - wpa2: WPA Version 2
ENC_TYPE	Encryption type (tkip/ccmp) - tkip: TKIP type. TKIP cannot be configured for WPA Version 2. - ccmp: AES-CCMP type

6) Configure the key management algorithm to PSK.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# keymgmt psk
```

7) Disable the 802.1x key management algorithm.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# no keymgmt ieee8021x
```

- 8) Disable the 802.1x authentication.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# no ieee8021x
```

- 9) After applying the changed configuration, exit the security configuration mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# apply
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# exit
```

- 10) To check the configuration information, use the following command.

```
WEC8500/configure# show wlan security summary
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <Security> → <L2> tab.

Back Apply	
PROFILE NAME	wlan1
L2 SECURITY TYPE ¹	WPA + WPA2
WPA POLICY	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WPA
ENCRYPTION TYPE	Both
WPA2 POLICY	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WPA2
ENCRYPTION TYPE	CCMP
AUTH KEY MGMT	<input checked="" type="radio"/> PSK <input type="radio"/> 802.1x
PSK FORMAT	ASCII
PSK KEY	<input type="checkbox"/> ³ <input type="password" value="••••••••"/>
PMK LIFETIME (SECONDS)	43200
EAPOL REAUTHENTICATION PERIOD	0

Figure 105. WPA/WPA2 PSK configuration

After selecting the L2 Security Type as WPA + WPA2 and AUTH KEY MGMT as PSK, click the <Apply> button.

For more information about detail configuration item, see ‘5.3.1 Initialization of WLAN Security Function’.

5.3.3 WPA/WPA2 802.1x Configuration

The WPA/WPA2 802.1x, one of wireless LAN authentication types does authentication through an authentication server such as a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) server.

To configure WPA/WPA2 802.1x to WLAN, execute the command as follows:



NOTE

As the 802.1x authentication needs interoperation with a RADIUS server, the RADIUS server required for the WLAN security configuration must be configured first. For more information about RADIUS server configuration, see '8.1 RADIUS Server Configuration'.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
```

- 2) Go to security configuration mode and initialize the configuration.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1# security
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# setDefault
```

- 3) Configure the WPA type.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# wpa_type
```

Parameter	Description
wpa_type	WPA type (wpa/wpa2): WPA Version 2 must be enabled at all times. - wpa: WPA Version 1 - wpa2: WPA Version 2

- 4) Configure the encryption type.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# [WPA_TYPE] [ENC_TYPE]
```

Parameter	Description
WPA_TYPE	WPA type (wpa/wpa2): Use the same value as the WPA type configured before. WPA Version 2 must be enabled at all times. - wpa: WPA Version 1 - wpa2: WPA Version 2

Parameter	Description
ENC_TYPE	Encryption type (tkip/ ccmp) - tkip: TKIP type. TKIP cannot be configured for WPA Version 2. - ccmp: AES-CCMP type

- 5) Disable the PSK key management algorithm.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# no keymgmt psk
```

- 6) Configure the key management algorithm to 802.1x.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# keymgmt ieee8021x
```

- 7) Enable the 802.1x authentication.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# ieee8021x
```

- 8) After enabling the RADIUS server function for authentication, specify the index of authentication RADIUS server. The RADIUS server information must be configured in advance.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# radius-server auth-servers  
[RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST]
```

Parameter	Description
RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST	RADIUS server ID list (Up to 3 IDs can be configured.)

- 9) After enabling the RADIUS server function for accounting, specify the index of account RADIUS server. The RADIUS server information must be configured in advance.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# radius-server acct-servers  
[RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST]
```

Parameter	Description
RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST	RADIUS server ID list (Up to 3 IDs can be configured.)

10) After applying the changed configuration, exit the security configuration mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# apply
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# exit
```

11) To check the configuration information, use the following command.

```
WEC8500/configure# show wlan security summary
```

12) To check configuration information, use the ‘show wlan security summary’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus.

- 1) Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <Security> → <Radius> tab.

Figure 106. WPA/WPA2 802.1x Configuration (1)

Item	Description
PROFILE NAME	A WLAN configuration name is displayed.
AUTHENTIC ATION SERVER	<p>Enable/ Disable</p> <p>Whether the authentication function is enabled. - Enable: The authentication function is enabled. - Disable: The authentication function is disabled.</p>
RADIUS SERVER 1	Authentication server that will be used as the first priority (Can select one out of pre-configured RADIUS servers.)
RADIUS SERVER 2	Authentication server that will be used as the second priority (Can select one out of pre-configured RADIUS servers.)
RADIUS SERVER 3	Authentication server that will be used as the third priority (Can select one out of pre-configured RADIUS servers.)

Item		Description
ACCOUNTING SERVER	Enable/Disable	Whether the accounting function is enabled. - Enable: The accounting function is enabled. - Disable: The accounting function is disabled.
	RADIUS SERVER 1	Accounting server that will be used as the first priority (Can select one out of pre-configured RADIUS servers.)
	RADIUS SERVER 2	Accounting server that will be used as the second priority (Can select one out of pre-configured RADIUS servers.)
	RADIUS SERVER 3	Accounting server that will be used as the third priority (Can select one out of pre-configured RADIUS servers.)
FALLBACK TEST INTERVAL		RADIUS server Fallback attempt interval (unit: s, range: 0-500, default: 0), When set to 0, the fallback function is disabled.
ACCOUNTING INTERVAL		Accounting information transmission interval (unit: s, range: 0-10000, default: 600), When set to 0, the periodic accounting information transmission function is disabled.

Select AUTHENTICATION SERVER and ACCOUNTING SERVER as Enable and configure the rest items.

Internal RADIUS Server

Operator can use a RADIUS server in the APC. The internal RADIUS server only supports the authentication function and does not support the accounting or aaa-override, etc. To use an internal RADIUS server, select 'Internal' when selecting a RADIUS server during authentication server configuration.

2) Click the <L2> tab.

PROFILE NAME	wlan1
L2 SECURITY TYPE ¹	WPA + WPA2
WPA POLICY	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WPA
ENCRYPTION TYPE	Both
WPA2 POLICY	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WPA2
ENCRYPTION TYPE	CCMP
AUTH KEY MGMT	<input type="radio"/> PSK <input checked="" type="radio"/> 802.1x
PSK FORMAT	ASCII
PSK KEY	<input type="checkbox"/> ³
PMK LIFETIME (SECONDS)	43200
EAPOL REAUTHENTICATION PERIOD	0

Figure 107. WPA/WPA2 802.1x Configuration (2)

Select the L2 Security Type as WPA + WPA2 and AUTH KEY MGMT as 802.1x. After configuring the rest values as required, click the <Apply> button. For more information about detail configuration item of L2 tab, see '5.3.1 Initialization of WLAN Security Function'.

5.3.4 Static WEP Configuration

The WEP is a security algorithm defined in the initial wireless LAN standard. It provides security by using a cryptographic key and Initial Vector (IV) to encrypt the wireless transmission data exchanged between an AP and a wireless terminal connected to a wireless LAN.

Configuration using CLI

For static WEP configuration, execute the following commands.

- 1) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
```

- 2) Go to security configuration mode and initialize the configuration.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1# security
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# setDefault
```

- 3) Disable WPA1, WPA2, and 802.1x authentication.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# no wpa
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# no wpa2
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# no ieee8021x
```

- 4) Enable the WEP.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# wep
```

- 5) Configure the WEP Shared Key mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# wep shared
```

- 6) Use the following command to configure the cryptographic key of WEP.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# wep encryption [KEY_TYPE]
[KEY_STRING] [KEY_INDEX] [KEY_LENGTH]
```

Parameter	Description
KEY_TYPE	WEP key Input format of WEP cryptographic key (ascii/hex) - ASCII: ASCII character string - HEX: Hexadecimal value
KEY STRING	WEP cryptographic key
KEY_INDEX	Key index (range: 1-4)
KEY_LENGTH	Key length (Bit unit) - 40 - 104

7) After applying the changed configuration, exit the security configuration mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# apply
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# exit
```

8) To check configuration information, use the 'show wlan security summary' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <Security> → <L2> tab.

PROFILE NAME	wlan1	Back	Apply
L2 SECURITY TYPE ¹	Static WEP		
STATIC WEP			
WEP KEY FORMAT	ASCII		
WEP KEY SIZE	104 bits		
WEP KEY INDEX	1		
WEP KEY	1234567890123		

Figure 108. Static WEP configuration

Select the L2 Security Type as Static WEP. After configuring the rest values as required, click the <Apply> button.

For more information about detail configuration item of L2 tab, see '5.3.1 Initialization of WLAN Security Function'.

5.3.5 Dynamic WEP Configuration

The Dynamic WEP is a security algorithm that improves the security vulnerabilities of a static WEP by using 802.1x authentication. Unlike the static WEP that is based on a configured fixed key, it creates a cryptographic key by executing 802.1x authentication when a terminal is connected.

Configuration using CLI

For dynamic WEP configuration, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → wlan configuration mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# wlan 1
```

- 2) Go to security configuration mode and initialize the configuration.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1# security
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# setDefault
```

- 3) Enable the 802.1x authentication.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# ieee8021x
```

- 4) To configure the length of a cryptographic key of dynamic WEP, execute the following command.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# ieee8021x encryption [KEY_LENGTH]
```

Parameter	Description
KEY_LENGTH	Key length (Bit unit) - 40 - 104

- 5) After enabling the RADIUS server function for authentication, specify the index of authentication RADIUS server. The RADIUS server information must be configured in advance.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# radius-server auth-servers
[RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST]
```

Parameter	Description
RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST	RADIUS server ID list (Up to 3 IDs can be configured.)

- 6) After enabling the RADIUS server function for accounting, specify the index of account RADIUS server. The RADIUS server information must be configured in advance.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# radius-server acct-servers
[RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST]
```

Parameter	Description
RADIUS_SERVER_ID_LIST	RADIUS server ID list (Up to 3 IDs can be configured.)

- 7) After applying the changed configuration, exit the security configuration mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# apply
WEC8500/configure/wlan 1/security# exit
```

- 8) To check the configuration information, execute the following command.

```
WEC8500/configure# show wlan security summary
```

- 9) To check configuration information, execute the ‘show wlan security summary’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus.

- 1) Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <Security> → <Radius> tab. For details about configuration, refer to the section 5.3.3.
- 2) Click the <L2> tab.

PROFILE NAME		wlan2	Back Apply
L2 SECURITY TYPE ¹		802.1x(Dynamic WEP) ▼	
802.1X(DYNAMIC WEP)			
WEP KEY SIZE		40 bits ▼	
EAPOL REAUTHENTICATION PERIOD		0	

Figure 109. Dynamic WEP Configuration Window

Select the L2 Security Type as Dynamic WEP. After configuring the rest values as required, click the <Apply> button.

For more information about detail configuration item of L2 tab, see ‘5.3.1 Initialization of WLAN Security Function’.

5.4 DHCP Configuration

The DHCP service of APC consists of DHCP server, DHCP relay, and DHCP proxy.

5.4.1 DHCP Server

5.4.1.1 DHCP Server Configuration

A DHCP server in the APC dynamically allocates an IP address to a client.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure #
```

- 2) To enable or disable the DHCP server, enter the 'ip dhcp' command. Use 'no' in front of the command to disable the configuration.
 - ip dhcp enable
 - no ip dhcp enable
- 3) To check configuration information, use the 'show ip dhcp' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <DHCP> → <Internal Server> menu in the sub-menus.

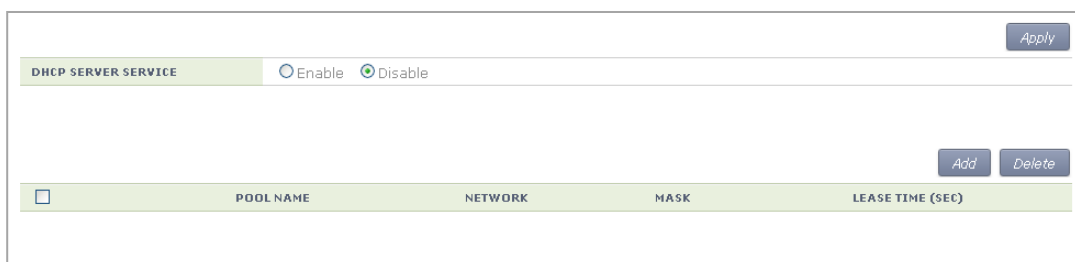


Figure 110. DHCP server configuration

Enable/Disable the DHCP SERVER SERVICE item in the Internal Server window to enable or disable a DHCP server.

5.4.1.2 DHCP Pool

The DHCP pool includes the range of IP address to be allocated to a client, DNS server that will be used by a DHCP client, NTP server, and default router IP address information, etc.

Configuration using CLI

[Pool Creation]

The procedure of creating a pool in an internal DHCP server and entering into the pool mode is as follows:

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure #
```

- 2) Enter the 'ip dhcp pool' command. Use 'no' in front of the command to delete a DHCP pool.
 - ip dhcp pool [POOL_NAME]
 - no ip dhcp pool [POOL_NAME]
- 3) To check configuration information, use the 'show ip dhcp' command.
To configure the DHCP Pool related function, execute the command as follows to go to the DHCP pool mode.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure # ip dhcp pool test
WEC8500/configure/ip/dhcp/pool test#
```

[Configuring IP address]

Before configuring a DHCP pool, you should configure a network first. If the network is not configured, you cannot execute other commands.

Enter the command as follows to configure the network bandwidth of a DHCP pool to serve. Enter 'no' parameter to delete a configured network bandwidth. After entering a separator '/' after an IP address, enter the length of a netmask address or enter a netmask address after the IP address.

- network [IP_ADDRESS] [NETMASK]
- network [IP_ADDRESS]/[LENGTH]
- no network

Parameter	Description
IP_ADDRESS	IP address
NETMASK	Netmask address
LENGTH	Netmask length

[Configuring Gateway]

This command configures the gateway address of a DHCP client. Enter 'no' parameter to delete a configured address.

- default-router [IP_ADDRESS]
- no default-router

Parameter	Description
IP_ADDRESS	Gateway IP address

[Configuring DNS Server]

Up to 3 IP addresses can be configured for a DNS server. Enter 'no' parameter to delete a configured DNS server. The lower command 'all' is used to delete all the IP addresses of a configured DNS server.

- dns-server [IP_ADDRESS]
- no dns-server [IP_ADDRESS]
- no dns-server all

Parameter	Description
IP_ADDRESS	DNS Server's IP address

[Configuring Domain Name]

This command configures or deletes a domain name.

- domain-name [DOMAIN]
- no domain-name [DOMAIN]

Parameter	Description
DOMAIN	Domain name to configure (e.g. samsung APC.co.kr)

[Configuring Fixed IP Address to MAC Address]

This command configures a fixed IP address to a specific MAC address or deletes the configuration.

The 'range' of IP address to configure cannot be overlapped with the IP range and maximum 255 IP addresses can be configured. In addition, use the 'no fix-address all' command to delete all the configured values.

- fix-address [aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff A.B.C.D]
- no fix-address [aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff A.B.C.D]
- fix-address all

As shown in the below example, 100.100.100.10 can be always allocated to the IP address of a wireless terminal whose MAC address is 11:22:33:44:55:66.

```
WEC8500/configure/ip/dhcp/pool test# fix-address 11:22:33:44:55:66
100.100.100.10
```

[Configuring IP Address Lease Time]

Configure the time when a wireless terminal receives an IP address. The 'lease infinite' command configures the time infinitely. If 'no' parameter is entered in front of the command, it is configured to 24 hours (default).

- lease [TIME]
- lease infinite
- no lease

Parameter	Description
TIME	Lease time (range: 120-8640000, Unit: s)

[Configuring NTP Server]

Up to 3 IP addresses of a NTP server can be configured or deleted. In addition, use the 'no ntp-server all' command to delete all the configured addresses of a NTP server.

- ntp-server [IP_ADDRESS]
- no ntp-server [IP_ADDRESS]
- no ntp-server all

Parameter	Description
IP_ADDRESS	The IP address of the NTP server

[Ping check]

When a DHCP server allocates an IP address to a client, ping check can be used to check if an IP address to allocate is being used in the current network.

- ping-check [enable/disable]

Parameter	Description
enable/disable	Configures whether to use ping check (default: disable)

[Configuring IP Address Range]

A DHCP server configures the range of IP address to allocate to a client. The range of IP address to add is up to 16 and the IP address specified in the range cannot be duplicated with the IP address of fix-address. Enter 'no' to delete the range of configured IP address and enter 'no range all' to delete all the ranges.

- range [IP_ADDRESS]
- range [IP_ADDRESS1] [IP_ADDRESS2]
- no range [IP_ADDRESS]
- no range [IP_ADDRESS1] [IP_ADDRESS2]
- no range all

Parameter	Description
IP_ADDRESS	IP address. Use to configure one IP address.
IP_ADDRESS1	Start address of IP address range
IP_ADDRESS2	Last address of IP address range

[Capwap Access Controller Address Configuration]

Up to three IP addresses for a Capwap controller can be configured or deleted. Also, all Capwap controller addresses can be deleted using the 'no capwap-dhcp-option' command.

- capwap-dhcp-option [IP_ADDRESS]
- no capwap-dhcp-option

Parameter	Description
IP_ADDRESS	IP address of the Capwap Controller

[Configuring Option Data]

Use the 'user-option' command to configure or delete the DHCP option. Use 'no' to delete each option and use 'no user-option all' to delete all the options.

- Option: Up to 254 can be entered (1-254).
- Data type: string (character string), octet (hex string), int (32 bit integer), uint (32-bit unsigned integer), int16 (16-bit integer), uint16 (16-bit unsigned integer), ipaddress (IP address)

- Mode: Can be configured to the active/passive mode.
 - active: Although a client does not request data transmission, the DHCP server transmits user-option data (Default).
 - passive: The DHCP server transmits data upon a client's request.

Command	Description
- user-option [1-254] string [string] [active/passive] - user-option [1-254] octet aa:bb:cc [active/passive] - user-option [1-254] int [integer] [active/passive] - user-option [1-254] uint [unsigned integer] [active/passive] - user-option [1-254] int16 [16 bit integer] [active/passive] - user-option [1-254] uint16 [16 bit unsigned integer] [active/passive] - user-option [1-254] ipaddress A.B.C.D [active/passive]	Configures an option.
- no user-option [1-254] string [string] [active/passive] - no user-option [1-254] octet aa:bb:cc [active/passive] - no user-option [1-254] int [integer] [active/passive] - no user-option [1-254] uint [unsigned integer] [active/passive] - no user-option [1-254] int16 [16 bit integer] [active/passive] - no user-option [1-254] uint16 [16 bit unsigned integer] [active/passive] - no user-option [1-254] ipaddress A.B.C.D [active/passive]	Deletes a configured option.
no user-option all	Deletes all the configured options.

A usage example is given below.

```

WEC8500/configure/ip/dhcp/pool test# user-option 3 string "hi, there"
active
WEC8500/configure/ip/dhcp/pool test# user-option 200 octet
33:4A:5C:6F:DD passive
WEC8500/configure/ip/dhcp/pool test# user-option 201 int -3000
WEC8500/configure/ip/dhcp/pool test# user-option 202 uint16 300
WEC8500/configure/ip/dhcp/pool test# user-option 203 ipaddress
111.22.22.33
```

[Retrieving Pool Information]

To check the entire information of a DHCP pool, execute the 'show ip dhcp pool' command. If you enter a pool name as a parameter as shown in 'show ip dhcp pool [POOL NAME]', you can check the information of a specific pool.

[Retrieving DHCP Lease Information]

To check the DHCP lease information, execute the 'show ip dhcp lease' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <DHCP> → <Internal Server> menu in the sub-menus.

Click the <Add> or <Delete> button to add or delete a DHCP pool.

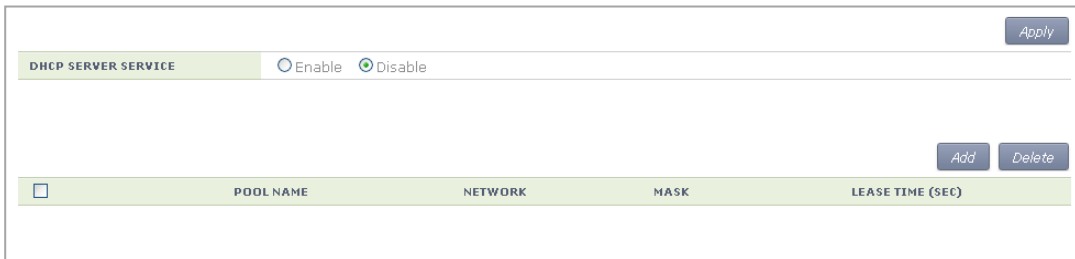


Figure 111. DHCP Pool (1)

The window where a DHCP pool can be added is shown below.

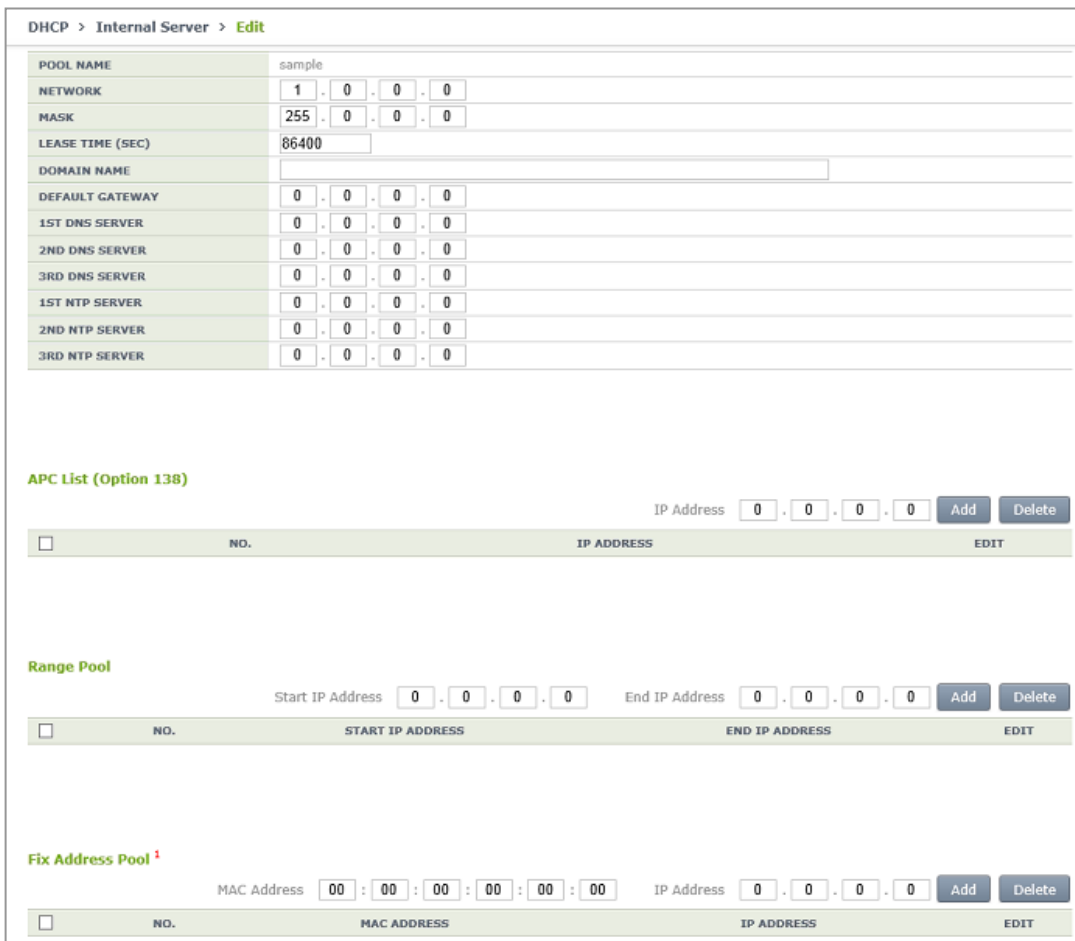


Figure 112. DHCP Pool (2)

- **POOL NAME:** DHCP pool name (mandatory input item)
- **NETWORK:** Network bandwidth IP that a DHCP server will serve (mandatory input item)
- **MASK:** Netmask length IP of an IP that is entered into the NETWORK item (mandatory input item)
- **LEASE TIME:** DHCP IP address lease time (Unit: s, default: 3600 s, Maximum value: 8640000 s)
- **DOMAIN NAME:** Configures a domain name that will be used by a DHCP client in a DNS.
- **DEFAULT GATEWAY:** Gateway IP that will be configured by a DHCP client
- **1ST/2ND/3RD DNS SERVER:** Configures a DNS server that will be used by a DHCP client.
- **1ST/2ND/3RD NTP SERVER:** Configures a NTP server that will be used by a DHCP client.
- **APC List (Option 138):** Configures APL list value corresponding to DHCP user option #138.
- **Range Pool:** Configures the range of IP address that will be leased to a DHCP client. Enter an IP address into the Start IP Address IP box and End Ip Address IP box each and then click the **<Add>** button to create a list. In addition, select one in the created list and click the **<Delete>** button to delete it. The IP address range cannot be overlapped with the IP address in a network bandwidth and also the IP address fixed to a MAC address.
- **Fixed Address Pool:** Configures a fixed IP address to the MAC address of a specific DHCP client. Enter a MAC address and an IP address and click the **<Add>** button to create the list. In addition, select one in the created list and click the **<Delete>** button to delete it. The IP address fixed to a MAC address cannot be overlapped with the IP address in a network bandwidth and also the IP address range.

5.4.1.3 Retrieving Number of DHCP Packets

To check the number of DHCP packets that the DHCP server receives, execute the 'show ip dhcp statistics' command.

5.4.2 DHCP Relay

The DHCP relay forwards a DHCP packet received from a client through broadcast to the DHCP server. Because it switches with the DHCP proxy, the DHCP relay is enabled when the DHCP proxy is disabled.

The DHCP relay is working in the unit of interface. It is disabled in the 'mgmt0' and 'lo' interface. The DHCP relay is not working even when no IP address is configured in the interface.

Configuration using CLI

The procedure of changing to the DHCP relay is as follows:

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

- 2) Switch to the DHCP relay.

The relay and proxy are operating in the switching mode. If a proxy is not used, it is operating in the relay mode.

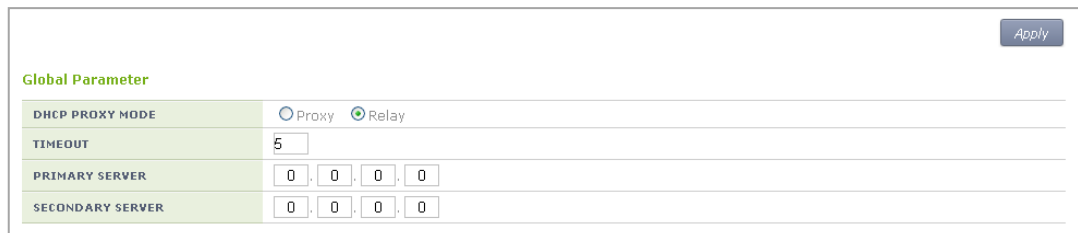
```
WEC8500/configure # no ip dhcp-proxy enable
```

- 3) To check the configured DHCP information, use the 'show ip dhcp-proxy' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <DHCP> → <Proxy> menu in the sub-menus.

You can configure the Proxy mode of DHCP to relay/proxy. Change the radio box for configuration in the DHCP PROXY MODE of Global Parameter item.



Global Parameter	
DHCP PROXY MODE	<input type="radio"/> Proxy <input checked="" type="radio"/> Relay
TIMEOUT	5
PRIMARY SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
SECONDARY SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Figure 113. DHCP Relay

5.4.3 DHCP Proxy

The procedure of changing to the DHCP proxy is as follows.

Configuration using CLI

The CLI configuring a DHCP proxy is located as a command under 'ip dhcp-proxy' in the configure mode.

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
```

- 2) Switch to the DHCP proxy.

```
WEC8500/configure#ip dhcp-proxy enable
```

- 3) To check the configured information, use the 'show ip dhcp-proxy' command.

- 4) Use the below command to check an IP address that is leased through the DHCP proxy.

```
WEC8500t#show ip dhcp proxy-lease
IP address | Server IP | MAC address | Lease Expiration time
10.10.10.100 | 1.1.1.1 | 00:1c:bf:c1:50:28 | 2012/08/31 12:00:24
```

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <DHCP> → <Proxy> menu in the sub-menus.

You can configure the Proxy mode of DHCP to relay/proxy. Change the radio box for configuration in the DHCP PROXY MODE of Global Parameter item.

Global Parameter	
DHCP PROXY MODE	<input type="radio"/> Proxy <input checked="" type="radio"/> Relay
TIMEOUT	5
PRIMARY SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
SECONDARY SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Figure 114. DHCP Proxy

5.4.4 Option 82 Configuration

The APC uses the DHCP Option 82 to provide various services during IP allocation by forwarding the information such as access control, QoS, or security policy, etc. when a wireless terminal connected to an AP receives an IP address.

The Option 82 has two fields, i.e. remote ID and circuit ID. Enter the name of an interface for which the APC constantly does relay/proxy in the circuit ID and enter a part of AP information in the remote ID accordingly. One of the following three data can be used as the remote id of Option 82.

- ap-mac: 802.11 MAC data of the AP. The length is 12-byte (Default).
- ap-mac-ssid: The character string of SSID is added to the data of AP-MAC. The length is variable.
- ap-mac-ssid: Ethernet MAC data of the AP. The length is 12-byte.

To configure Option 82 related functions, go to the interface mode by executing the following command.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#interface vlan10
WEC8500/configure/interface vlan10#
```

Configuration using CLI

[Configuring Option 82]

This command enables or disables the Option 82 function. It can be configured for each interface.

- dhcp option-82 [MODE]

Parameter	Description
MODE	Configures whether to use the Option 82 function (enable/disable).

[Configuring Remote ID]

The command is shown below.

- dhcp option-82 remote-id [MODE]

Parameter	Description
MODE	Specifies one out of the following three data to the Option 82 remote-id. - ap-mac: MAC address of an AP - ap-mac-ssid: MAC address and SSID of an AP - ap- ethermac: Ethernet MAC address of an AP

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Interfaces> menu in the sub-menus. In the interface, you can see the page where you can change the Option 82.

<input type="checkbox"/>	INTERFACE NAME	VLAN ID	IP ADDRESS	ADMIN STATUS	OPER STATUS
	lo	-	1.1.1.1	up	up
<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN0010	10	10.10.10.3	up	down
	lo	-	127.0.0.1	up	up
	mgmt0	-	192.168.5.132	up	up

1

Figure 115. Option 82 configuration (1)

Select an item in the list and perform detail configuration.

Controller > Interfaces > Edit

Back Apply

INTERFACE NAME	VLAN0010		
VLAN ID	10		
ADMIN STATUS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Up <input type="radio"/> Down		

Physical

PORTS	MODE	HYBRID EGRESS_TAGGED
ge1	Not Used	Service Disable
ge2	Access	Service Disable
ge3	Not Used	Service Disable
ge4	Not Used	Service Disable
ge5	Not Used	Service Disable
ge6	Not Used	Service Disable
ge7	Not Used	Service Disable
ge8	Not Used	Service Disable
xe1	Not Used	Service Disable
xe2	Not Used	Service Disable

Address

IP ADDRESS	10	10	10	3
NETMASK	255	255	255	0

DHCP

GLOBAL USE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
PRIMARY DHCP SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
SECONDARY DHCP SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
OPTION 82 STATE	Disable
OPTION 82 TYPE	AP-MAC

Figure 116. Option 82 configuration (2)

After unchecking the GLOBAL USE check box in the DHCP part, configure OPTION 82 STATE and OPTION 82 TYPE and then click the <Apply> button.

In the OPTION 82 STATE, configure Enable/Disable for Option 82 and configure ap-mac, ap-mac-ssid, or ap-ethermac for OPTION 82 TYPE.

5.4.5 Primary/Secondary Server Configuration

The DHCP relay/proxy can transmit a DHCP packet received from a client through broadcast to maximum two DHCP servers. Here, the two servers are called a primary server and a secondary server.

The configuration of primary/secondary servers can be done in the interface mode, but it is also possible in the global mode. If the configuration exists both in the interface mode and global mode, the configuration in the interface mode has a higher priority.

Configuration using CLI

[Configuration at Interface]

- 1) Go to configure → interface mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#interface [INTERFACE_NAME]
```

- 2) Enter the 'dhcp server' command.

To configure only a primary server, do not enter the information of a secondary server.

- dhcp server primary A.B.C.D secondary A.B.C.D: Configures both primary/secondary servers.
- dhcp server primary A.B.C.D: Configures only a primary server.
- no dhcp server primary A.B.C.D secondary A.B.C.D: Deletes both primary/secondary servers.
- no dhcp server primary A.B.C.D: Deletes a primary server.

[Configuration at Global]

- 1) Go to configure mode of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure#
```

- 2) Enter the 'ip dhcp-proxy default-dhcp-server' command.

To configure only a primary server, do not enter the information of a secondary server.

- ip dhcp-proxy default-dhcp-server primary A.B.C.D secondary A.B.C.D: Configures both global primary/secondary servers.
- ip dhcp-proxy default-dhcp-server primary A.B.C.D: Configures only a global primary server.
- no ip dhcp-proxy default-dhcp-server primary A.B.C.D secondary A.B.C.D: Deletes both global primary/secondary servers.
- no ip dhcp-proxy default-dhcp-server primary A.B.C.D: Deletes a global primary server.

Configuration using Web UI

[Configuration at Interface]

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Controller> → <Interfaces> menu in the sub-menus. In the interface, you can see the page where you can change the Option 82.

<input type="checkbox"/>	INTERFACE NAME	VLAN ID	IP ADDRESS	ADMIN STATUS	OPER STATUS
<input type="checkbox"/>	lo	-	1.1.1.1	up	up
<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN0010	10	10.10.10.3	up	down
<input type="checkbox"/>	lo	-	127.0.0.1	up	up
<input type="checkbox"/>	mgmt0	-	192.168.5.132	up	up

1

Figure 117. Primary/Secondary server configuration (1)

Select an item in the list and perform detail configuration.

Controller > Interfaces > Edit

Back Apply

INTERFACE NAME	VLAN0010		
VLAN ID	10		
ADMIN STATUS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Up <input type="radio"/> Down		

Physical

PORTS	MODE	HYBRID EGRESS_TAGGED
ge1	Not Used	Service Disable
ge2	Access	Service Disable
ge3	Not Used	Service Disable
ge4	Not Used	Service Disable
ge5	Not Used	Service Disable
ge6	Not Used	Service Disable
ge7	Not Used	Service Disable
ge8	Not Used	Service Disable
xge1	Not Used	Service Disable
xge2	Not Used	Service Disable

Address

IP ADDRESS	10	10	10	3
NETMASK	255	255	255	0

DHCP

GLOBAL USE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
PRIMARY DHCP SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
SECONDARY DHCP SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
OPTION 82 STATE	Disable
OPTION 82 TYPE	AP-MAC

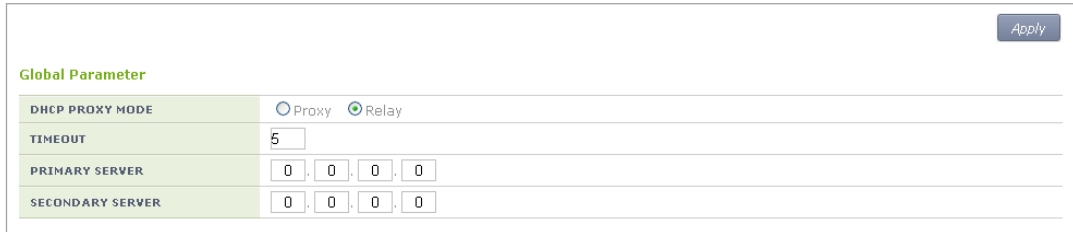
Figure 118. Primary/Secondary server configuration (2)

After unchecking the GLOBAL USE checkbox in the DHCP part, configure PRIMARY DHCP SERVER and ‘SECONDARY DHCP SERVER’ and then click the <Apply> button.

[Configuration at Global]

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <DHCP> → <Proxy> menu in the sub-menus.

Configure the PRIMARY SERVER and SECONDARY SERVER of the Global Parameter. If you does Global configuration, the configuration is applied to all the interfaces whose 'GLOBAL USE' checkbox is checked in the DHCP configuration of APC interface.



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Global Parameter" with an "Apply" button in the top right corner. The window contains the following fields:

DHCP PROXY MODE	<input type="radio"/> Proxy <input checked="" type="radio"/> Relay
TIMEOUT	5
PRIMARY SERVER	0 0 0 0
SECONDARY SERVER	0 0 0 0

Figure 119. Primary/Secondary server configuration (3)

5.5 Radio Service Configuration

The APC supports WLAN-based radio configuration. You can enable or disable WMM based on WLAN and change DTIM and station idle timeout.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → wlan-radio-service mode of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# wlan-radio-service
APC/configure/wlan-radio-service#
```

- 2) Configure whether to enable or disable WMM.
 - wmm-mode [WLAN_ID] [MODE]

Parameter	Description
WLAN_ID	WLAN ID (range: 1-240)
MODE	WMM configuration mode (disable/enable)

- 3) Configure DTIM.
 - dtim [WLAN_ID] [DTIM]

Parameter	Description
WLAN_ID	WLAN ID (range: 1-240)
DTIM	Beacon DTIM: 1~255(default: 1)

- 4) Configure station idle timeout.
 - sta-idle-timeout [WLAN_ID] [TIMEOUT]

Parameter	Description
WLAN_ID	WLAN ID (range: 1-240)
TIMEOUT	Station idle timeout (range: 30-3600, unit: 15 s, default: 300)

- 5) To check the configured information, use the 'show wlan-radio-service' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <WLANs> menu in the sub-menus. Select a WLAN ID to change in the WLANs screen and go to the <Advanced> tab.

PROFILE NAME	wlan1	<input type="button" value="Back"/>	<input type="button" value="Apply"/>
ACL RULE		
STATIC ADDRESS DISALLOWED	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
DHCP OVERRIDE	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
DHCP SERVER	0 . 0 . 0 . 0		
			<input type="button" value="Apply"/>
WMM	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
DTIM	1		
STATION IDLE TIMEOUT (SEC)	300		
			<input type="button" value="Apply"/>
VOIP FAILURE DETECT	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		

Figure 120. Radio service configuration

After configuring the below items, click the <Apply> button.

- WMM: Configures the WMM mode.
- DTIM: Enter a DTIM value (1-255).
- STATION IDLE TIMEOUT: Enter a station idle timeout value. The value range is 30-3600 and it must be the multiple of 15.

CHAPTER 6. Wi-Fi Configuration

This chapter describes how to manage the 802.11a, 802.11b, 802.11n or 802.11ac device of W-EP AP.

An 802.11n device supports 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz wireless bandwidth and high data processing speed.

6.1 802.11a/b/g/n/ac Radio Property

6.1.1 802.11a/b/g Configuration

The configuration of radio property for 802.11a/b/g/ac is as follows:

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → radio mode to configure of CLI. The radio mode can be either '80211a' or '80211bg'.

An example of entering into 80211a is shown below.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# 80211a
APC/configure/80211a#
```

- 2) Configure the channel of an AP.
 - channel [CHANNEL] ap [AP_ID]: Configures the channel of an AP.
 - channel [CHANNEL] ap [AP_ID] fixed: A channel is designed to be fixed and it is not affected by the automatic adjustment function such as RRM. (When executing the 'show 80211a summary' or 'show 80211bg summary', the channel value is displayed in '*'.)

Parameter	Description
CHANNEL	Channel Configuration - Range for 80211a: 36-165 - Range for 80211bg: 1-14
AP_ID	AP ID (range: 1-3000)

- 3) Configure channel of multiple APs belonging to the group.
- channel [CHANNEL] group [GROUP_ID] all-ap/active-ap: Channel is configured for multiple APs.
 - channel [CHANNEL] group [GROUP_ID] all-ap/active-ap fixed: Channel is fixed and is not affected by automatic adjustment functions such as RRM. (Channel values are indicated as * when retrieved by ‘show 80211a summary’ or ‘show 80211bg summary’.)

Parameter	Description
CHANNEL	Channel Configuration - Range for 80211a: 36-165 - Range for 80211bg: 1-14
GROUP_ID	ID of the AP group
all-ap	Applies to all APs in the group
active-ap	Applies to all live APs in the group

- 4) Configure the TX power of an AP.
- txPower [POWER] ap [AP_ID]: Configures a TX power.
 - txPower [POWER] ap [AP_ID]fixed: The TX power is configured as fixed and it is not affected by the automatic adjustment function such as RRM. (When executing the ‘show 80211a summary’ or ‘show 80211bg summary’, the channel value is displayed in ‘*’.)

Parameter	Description
POWER	TX power value (range: 3-23)
AP_ID	AP ID (range: 1-3000)

- 5) Configure TX power of multiple APs belonging to the group.
- txPower [POWER] group [GROUP_ID] all-ap/active-ap: TX Power Setting
 - txPower [POWER] group [GROUP_ID] all-ap/active-ap fixed: TX power is fixed and is not affected by automatic adjustment functions such as RRM. (Channel values are indicated as * when retrieved by ‘show 80211a summary’ or ‘show 80211bg summary’.)

Parameter	Description
POWER	TX power value (range: 3-23)
GROUP_ID	ID of the AP group
all-ap	Applies to all APs in the group
active-ap	Applies to all live APs in the group

- 6) To check the configured channel and TX power information, use the following command.

```
WEC8500# show 80211a[|80211bg] summary
```

AP Name	MAC Address	Operation State	Channel	TxPower
AP_f4d9fb23bfb9	F4:D9:FB:23:BF:B9	1	161	10 *
AP_f4d9fb23c2b9	F4:D9:FB:23:C2:B9	1	157	5
AP_f4d9fb23c079	F4:D9:FB:23:C0:79	1	153	5
AP_f4d9fb23baf9	F4:D9:FB:23:BA:F9	1	149	5
AP_f4d9fb23beb9	F4:D9:FB:23:BE:B9	1	64	5

In this example, the AP_f4d9fb23bfb9 whose Tx Power is displayed as 10* has a fixed TX power.

- 7) Configure the beacon period of an AP.
- beacon period [PERIOD] global

Parameter	Description
PERIOD	Beacon period (range: 40-3500)

- 8) Configure the fragmentation threshold of an AP.
- threshold fragmentation [THRESHOLD] global

Parameter	Description
THRESHOLD	Fragmentation threshold (range: 256-8000)

- 9) Configure the data rate of an AP.
- rate [MODE] [RATE] global

Parameter	Description
MODE	Mode (basic/supported) - basic: Basic rate at which a terminal connects to an AP. - supported: A connected terminal that supports the supported rate can communicate with an AP at the supported rate.
RATE	Data rate - Range for 80211a: 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps - Range for 80211bg: 1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps

- 10) To check the configured beacon period, fragmentation threshold, and data rate information, uses the 'show 80211a radio-config global' command.

- 11) Configure the bandwidth of the AP. Bandwidth can be configured only for 80211a/n/ac.
- bandwidth [BANDWIDTH] ap [AP_ID]: Bandwidth is configured for a specific AP.
 - bandwidth [BANDWIDTH] global: Bandwidth is configured for all APs.

Parameter	Description
BANDWIDTH	- 20: 20 MHz - 40: 40 MHz - 80: 80 MHz - 160: 160 MHz (to be supported in the future) - 8080: 80 + 80 MHz (to be supported in the future)
AP_ID	ID of the AP (range: 1-3000)

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> → <802.11a/n> or <802.11b/g/n> menu in the sub-menus.

An example of selecting 802.11a/n is shown below.

The screenshot shows a web configuration interface for an 802.11a/b/g/n radio. It is divided into three main sections, each with an 'Apply' button to its right. The first section is for AP profile configuration, with fields for 'AP PROFILE NAME' (ap_1), 'AP NAME' (PV45), and 'SERVICE' (radio buttons for Enable and Disable, with 'Enable' selected). The second section is for channel configuration, with 'CURRENT CHANNEL' (a dropdown menu showing 161) and 'CHANNEL FIX' (radio buttons for Enable and Disable, with 'Disable' selected). The third section is for power configuration, with 'TX CURRENT POWER(DBM)' (a text input field showing 3) and 'TX POWER FIX' (radio buttons for Enable and Disable, with 'Disable' selected). At the top right of the page, there are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons.

Figure 121. 802.11a/b/g/n radio (1)

The configuration items are as follows:

[AP Service Configuration]

- SERVICE: Enable or disable the radio service.

[Channel Configuration]

- CURRENT CHANNEL: Configures a channel.
 - Range for 80211a: 36-165
 - Range for 80211bg: 1-14
- CHANNEL FIX: The configured channel is configured as fixed and it is not affected by the automatic adjustment function such as RRM. When selecting the <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac> or <802.11b/g/n> menu, the channel value is displayed as *. (Optional)

[TX power Configuration]

- TX CURRENT POWER: TX Power (range: 3-23)
- TX POWER FIX: The configured TX power is configured as fixed and it is not affected by the automatic adjustment function such as RRM. When selecting the <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac> or <802.11b/g/n> menu, the Tx power value is displayed as *. (Optional)



NOTE

To check the configured channel and TX power information, go to <Monitor> → <Access Points> → <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac> or <802.11b/g/n>.

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac> or <802.11b/g/n> → <802.11h> menu in the sub-menus. An example of selecting 802.11a/n/ac is shown below.

General		Data Rates ²	
BANDWIDTH (MHZ)	80	6 MBPS	Disable
BEACON PERIOD (TUS)	110	9 MBPS	Disable
RTS THRESHOLD (BYTES)	2346	12 MBPS	Disable
SHORT RETRY	4	18 MBPS	Disable
LONG RETRY	30	24 MBPS	Basic
FRAGMENTATION THRESHOLD (BYTES) ¹	3000	36 MBPS	Supported
TX MSDU LIFE TIME (TUS)	512	48 MBPS	Supported
RX MSDU LIFE TIME (TUS)	512	54 MBPS	Supported
MAX. ALLOWED STATIONS	127		
CONTROLLED VOICE OPTIMIZATION	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		

Figure 122. 802.11a/b/g/n radio (2)

[General]

- BANDWIDTH: Configures bandwidth (range: 20, 40, 80). Available for 802.11a/n/ac only.
- BEACON PERIOD: Beacon period (range: 40-3500)
- FRAGMENTATION THRESHOLD: AP fragmentation threshold (range: 256-8000)
- MAX. CLIENT COUNTS: Limits the number of connected clients per radio
- CONTROLLED VOICE OPTIMIZATION: Configures voice optimization.

[Data Rates]

The data rate selection options are as follows:

- Basic: Basic rate supported for a terminal to connect to an AP.
- Supported: A connected terminal that supports the supported rate can communicate with an AP at the supported rate.
- Data Rates: data rate
 - Range for 80211a: 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps
 - Range for 80211bg: 1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps

6.1.2 802.11n Configuration

The 802.11n configuration is as follows:

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → radio mode (80211a or 80211bg) to configure of CLI.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# 80211a
```

- 2) Go to the 11n-support mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/80211a#11n-support
```

- 3) Configure an AP so that it can support 802.11n property.

```
WEC8500/configure/80211a/11n-support# enable [AP_ID]
```

Parameter	Description
AP_ID	AP ID (range: 1-500)

- 4) Configure the Modulation and Coding Scheme (MCS) rate.

```
WEC8500/configure/80211a/11n-support# mcs [RATE] ap [AP_ID]
```

Parameter	Description
RATE	MSC rate (range: 0-23)
AP_ID	AP ID (range: 1-500)

- 5) To check the configured 11n-support information, use the ‘show 80211a radio-config ap [AP_ID]’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Access Points> → <802.11a/n/ac> or <802.11b/g/n> → <General> menu in the sub-menu.

Perform the configuration by referring to ‘6.1.1 802.11a/b/g Configuration’.

6.1.3 802.11ac Configuration

The 802.11ac configuration is as follows:

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure radio mode of 80211a to configure.

```
WEC8500# configure terminal
WEC8500/configure# 80211a
```

- 2) Enter 11ac-support mode.

```
WEC8500/configure/80211a#11ac-support
```

- 3) Configure the AP so that it can support the 802.11ac property.

```
WEC8500/configure/80211a/11ac-support# enable [AP_ID]
```

Parameter	Description
AP_ID	ID of the AP (range: 1-500)

- 4) Configure the Modulation and Coding Scheme (MCS) rate.

```
WEC8500/configure/80211a/11n-support# mcs [RATE] ap [AP_ID]
```

Parameter	Description
RATE	MSC rate (range: 0-23)
AP_ID	ID of the AP (range: 1-500)

- 5) To check the configured 11ac-support information, use the ‘show 80211a radio-config ap[AP_ID]’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main Window>, select <Configuration> and then select <Access Points> → <802.11a/n/ac> or <Radio> → <802.11a/n/ac> → <802.11n/ac> in the submenu.

An example of selecting 802.11a/n/ac is shown below.

Radio > 802.11a/n/ac > 802.11n/ac			
OPERATIONAL TYPE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 802.11a		
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 802.11n		
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 802.11ac		
HT(802.11N) MCS SETTING	<input type="checkbox"/> 0 (7 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 12 (87 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 (14 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 13 (116 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 (21 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 14 (130 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3 (29 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 15 (144 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 4 (43 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 16 (22 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 5 (58 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 17 (43 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 6 (65 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 18 (65 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 7 (72 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 19 (87 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 8 (14 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 20 (130 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 9 (29 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 21 (173 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10 (43 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 22 (195 Mbps)	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 11 (58 Mbps)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 23 (217 Mbps)	
VHT(802.11AC) MCS SETTING	1 Spatial Stream	0~9	
	2 Spatial Streams	0~9	
	3 Spatial Streams	0~9	
OPTIONS	Guard Interval	20MHz	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Short <input type="radio"/> Long
		40MHz	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Short <input type="radio"/> Long
		80MHz	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Short <input type="radio"/> Long
	Beamforming	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	

[OPERATIONAL TYPE]

Enable/disable 11ac operation.

[VHT (802.11AC) MCS SETTING]

- Determine the spatial stream count for each AP model and enter maximum MCS value for each spatial stream count.
- Example: maximum of seven MCS for one spatial stream, maximum of eight MCS for two spatial streams, and maximum of nine MCS for three spatial streams
 - 1 spatial stream: 7
 - 2 spatial streams: 8
 - 3 spatial streams: 9

[OPTIONS]

- Guard-interval (11n): Select short/long for Guard-interval 20/40 Mhz respectively.
- Guard-interval (11ac): Select short/long for Guard-interval 20/40/80 Mhz respectively.

6.2 Wi-Fi QoS Configuration

The APC provides various QoS in the wire/wireless section for every packet type (voice, video, best-effort, or background). The QoS can be configured for each wireless section (2.4 GHz, 5 GHz).

6.2.1 QoS Configuration of Wireless Terminal

The system provides probable QoS by changing the Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameter in a wireless section.

Configuration using CLI

To configure an EDCA profile in the upward wireless section of a wireless terminal, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → radio mode to configure of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# [80211a/80211bg]
```

- 2) Apply the EDCA profile.
 - edca-parameters [PROFILE] station

Parameter	Description
PROFILE	Configures each EDCA profile (wmm_default_sta/wmm_default_ap/edca_user1/edca_user2).

- 3) To check the application status of a configured EDCA profile, use the 'show 80211a [80211bg] qos edca-parameters wmm_default_sta' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Radio> → <802.11a/n> or <802.11b/g/n> → <QoS> menu in the sub-menus.

In the QoS menu, there are Wired and Wireless tab. To change the Station EDCA parameter, select the Wired tab. If you want to change the AP EDCA parameter to configure the QoS of an AP wireless section, select the Wireless tab.

[Wired tab]

EDCA PROFILE: WMM Default

Tagging Policy

802.1P POLICY: None

DSCP POLICY: Enable Disable

OUTER DSCP: Inner Packet

INNER DSCP: Default Value

PROTOCOL: DSCP

QoS Default Values

ACCESS CATEGORY	PROTOCOL	VALUE
VOICE	802.1p	6
	DSCP	46
VIDEO	802.1p	4
	DSCP	26
BEST EFFORT	802.1p	0
	DSCP	0
BACKGROUND	802.1p	1
	DSCP	8

Figure 123. QoS configuration of a wireless terminal (1)

[Wireless tab]

EDCA PROFILE: WMM Default

QoS Default Values

ACCESS CATEGORY	PROTOCOL	VALUE
VOICE	802.1p	6
	DSCP	46
VIDEO	802.1p	4
	DSCP	26
BEST EFFORT	802.1p	0
	DSCP	0
BACKGROUND	802.1p	1
	DSCP	8

Figure 124. QoS configuration of a wireless terminal (2)

6.2.2 QoS Configuration of AP

6.2.2.1 Wire Section

The APC provides QoS in a wire section using 802.1p and Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) marking and it can adjust packet traffics because it can adjust queue length depending on packet type.

Configuration using CLI

To configure the Station QoS parameter that will be applied to the wire section between APC and AP, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → QoS mode of a wireless section of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# [80211a/80211bg] qos
APC/configure/80211a/qos#
```

- 2) Configure a QoS policy to a wire section packet.
 - 802.1P Policy: enable policy [802_1P]
 - DSCP Policy: enable policy [DSCP_OUTER] [DSCP_INNER]

Parameter	Description
enable	Enables 802.1p or DSCP marking.
802_1P	802.1p configuration (user_priority/default) - user_priority: Marks the 802.1p or User Priority value of an incoming packet into the 802.1p field. - default: Marks pre-configured basic value to the 802.1p field.
DSCP_OUTER	DSCP Outer configuration (inner_packet/default) - inner_packet: Marks the DSCP value of an incoming packet into the Outer DSCP field. - default: Marks pre-configured basic value to the Outer DSCP field.
DSCP_INNER	DSCP Inner configuration (no_mark/default) - no_mark: Marks no value into the Inner DSCP field. - default: Marks pre-configured basic value to the Inner DSCP field.

- 3) Configure a default 802.1p value per packet.
 - dot1p-tag [PACKET_TYPE] [802.1P_TAG]

Parameter	Description
PACKET_TYPE	Packet type configuration (voice/video/best_effort/background)
802.1P_TAG	Default 802.1p value

- 4) Configure a default DSCP value per packet.
- dscp-tag [PACKET_TYPE] [DSCP TAG]

Parameter	Description
PACKET_TYPE	Packet type configuration (voice/video/best_effort/background)
DSCP_TAG	Default DSCP value

- 5) Configure a protocol to distinguish packet types.
- protocol [PROTOCOL]

Parameter	Description
PROTOCOL	Protocol configuration (none/dot1p/dscp) - none: Determine the type of every incoming packet with best effort. - dot1p: Judge the packet type by checking the 802.1p field of an incoming packet. - dscp: Judge the packet type by checking the DSCP field of an incoming packet.

The packet judgment criteria are as follows: For example, if the packet type is voice, the 802.1p input value is 6 or 7 and the input range of DSCP value is 46-63.

Also, if the packet type is video, the 802.1p input value is 4 or 5 and the input range of DSCP value is 24-45.

802.1p	DSCP	Packet type
6, 7	46~63	voice
4, 5	24~45	video
0, 3	0~7, 16~23	best effort
1, 2	8~15	background

- 6) To check the configured policy and QoS parameter information per packet, use the 'show 80211a[|80211bg] qos policy' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Radio> → <802.11a/n> or <802.11b/g/n> → <QoS> menu in the sub-menus.

- 1) Select one out of None/Default/User Priority in the 802.1P POLICY drop-down list of Tagging Policy.
- 2) To disable a DSCP policy in the DSCP POLICY, select Disable.
- 3) To enable a DSCP policy in the DSCP POLICY, select Enable.
 - a) Select one out of Inner Packet/Default Value in the OUTER DSCP drop-down list.
 - b) Select one out of No Mark/Default Value in the INNER DSCP drop-down list.
- 4) Select one out of None/802.1p/DSCP in the PROTOCOL drop-down list.
- 5) Enter 802.1p or a DSCP value into the QoS Default Values.
- 6) Click the <Apply> button to apply.

6.2.2.2 Wireless Section

The system can provide QoS service in a wireless section for each AP downward packet type (voice, video, best effort, background). You can configure 802.1p and DSCP tag which are the criteria used to select access category.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → QoS mode of a wireless section of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# [80211a/80211bg] qos
APC/configure/80211a/qos#
```

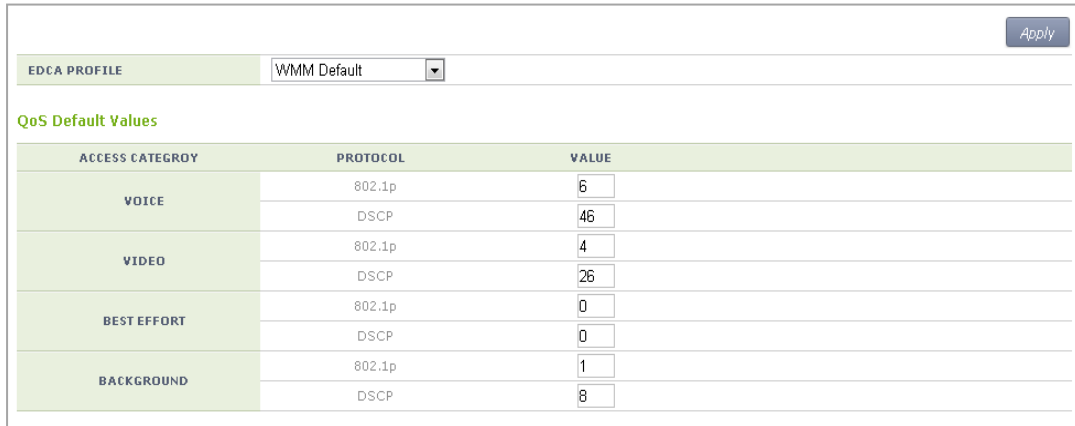
- 2) Configure 802.1p or DSCP tag value to use for a packet type.
 - ap-tags [PACKET_TYPE] [802.1P TAG] [DSCP TAG]

Parameter	Description
PACKET_TYPE	Packet type configuration (voice/video/best_effort/background)
802.1P_TAG	802.1p configuration
DSCP_TAG	DSCP tag configuration

- 3) To check the QoS parameter information of a configured AP, use the 'show 80211a [80211bg] qos ac-profile [PACKET_TYPE]' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Radio> → <802.11a/n> or <802.11b/g/n> → <QoS> menu in the sub-menus.



ACCESS CATEGORY	PROTOCOL	VALUE
VOICE	802.1p	6
	DSCP	46
VIDEO	802.1p	4
	DSCP	26
BESTEFFORT	802.1p	0
	DSCP	0
BACKGROUND	802.1p	1
	DSCP	8

Figure 125. QoS configuration of AP (wireless section)

In the Access Point tab, enter 802.1p or a DSCP value into the QoS Default Values. Click the <Apply> button to apply.

6.2.3 Configuring QoS Profile of a Specific Terminal

You can configure a QoS profile that is applied to a specific wireless terminal. This QoS profile is applied from the RADIUS server of a wireless terminal during authentication.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → QoS profile configuration mode of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# qos <profile name>
APC/configure/qos Samsung #
```

- 2) Configure 802.1p and a DSCP value that will be used for each access category.
 - ac [AC] [802.1P_TAG] [DSCP_TAG]

Parameter	Description
AC	Access Category(AC_VO/AC_VI/AC_BE/AC_BK)
802.1P_TAG	802.1p configuration (range: 0-7)
DSCP_TAG	DSCP tag configuration (range: 0-63)

- 3) Configure the brief information of a profile.
 - description [DESCRIPTION]

Parameter	Description
DESCRIPTION	Profile description

- 4) Configure maximum allowed 802.1p priority value used in the Traffic Identifier (TID) field of AP QoS packet.
 - max-dot1p <802.1p tag>

Parameter	Description
802.1P_TAG	Maximum allowed 802.1p configuration (range: 0-7)

- 5) To check the configured QoS profile information, use the 'show qos profile' command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <User QoS> menu in the sub-menus. To create a QoS profile to apply to a terminal, click the <Add> button in the initial window.

The QoS addition window consists of the following QoS parameters. By entering each QoS parameter, you can configure the QoS profile of a specific terminal or configure the usage control function for each user.

ID		1
PROFILE NAME		
DESCRIPTION		
MAX. DOT1P TAG		6
PER-USER UPSTREAM BANDWIDTH CONTRACT (Kbps)		0
PER-USER DOWNSTREAM BANDWIDTH CONTRACT (Kbps)		0
VOICE	802.1P TAG	6
	DSCP TAG	46
VIDEO	802.1P TAG	4
	DSCP TAG	26
BEST EFFORT	802.1P TAG	0
	DSCP TAG	0
BACKGROUND	802.1P TAG	1
	DSCP TAG	8

Figure 126. Configuring QoS profile of a specific terminal

- ID: ID (range: 1-16)
- PROFILE NAME: Profile name
- DESCRIPTION: Profile description
- MAX. DOT1P TAG: Maximum allowed 802.1p tag (range: 0-7)
- PER-USER UPSTREAM BANDWIDTH CONTRACT: Maximum upward usage (range: 0-450000)
- PER-USER DOWNSTREAM BANDWIDTH CONTRACT: Maximum downward usage (range: 0-450000)
- VOICE/VIDEO/BEST EFFORT/BACKGROUND: Enter 802.1P TAG (range: 0-7) and DSCP TAG (range: 0-64) for each item.

6.2.4 Voice Optimization Configuration

The APC configures an EDCA parameter value that is optimized for voice service to an AP in real-time.

Configuration using CLI

- 1) Go to configure → radio cvo mode to configure of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# [80211a|80211bg] cvo
APC/configure/80211a/cvo#
```

- 2) Enable or disable the function.
 - [no] enable
- 3) To check the configured information, use the ‘show 80211a cvo config’ command.

Configuration using Web UI

In the menu bar of <WEC Main window>, select <Configuration> and then select the <Radio> → <802.11a/n> or <802.11b/g/n> → <General> menu in the sub-menus.

General		Data Rates	
BEACON PERIOD (TUS)	100	6 MBPS	Basic
RTS THRESHOLD (BYTES)	2346	9 MBPS	Supported
SHORT RETRY	4	12 MBPS	Basic
LONG RETRY	10	18 MBPS	Supported
FRAGMENTATION THRESHOLD (BYTES)	2346	24 MBPS	Basic
TX MSDU LIFE TIME (TUS)	512	36 MBPS	Supported
RX MSDU LIFE TIME (TUS)	512	48 MBPS	Supported
MAX. CLIENT COUNTS	127	54 MBPS	Supported
CONTROLLED VOICE OPTIMIZATION	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		

Figure 127. Configuring voice optimization

To enable Controlled Voice Optimization (CVO), select Enable in the CONTROLLED VOICE OPTIMIZATION. To disable it, select Disable.

6.3 802.11h Configuration

The APC supports the configuration and transmission power limitation for the Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) function in an AP. When the AP detects radar, an event is sent to the WEM and a detouring channel can be configured in the AP.

Configuration using CLI

For channel switching announcement related configuration and power constraint value configuration in an AP, execute the command as follows:

- 1) Go to configure → 80211h configuration mode of CLI.

```
APC# configure terminal
APC/configure# 80211h
APC/configure/80211h#
```

- 2) Configure the 802.11h information.
 - channel-switch [MODE] [RESTRICTION] [SWITCH COUNT]

Parameter	Description
MODE	Whether the switching announcement function is enabled/disabled
RESTRICTION	Whether the channel packet transmission restriction mode is enabled (disable/enable)
SWITCH COUNT	Waiting time until channel switching announcement

- 3) Configure the transmission power of a wireless terminal.
 - power-constraint [VALUE]

Parameter	Description
VALUE	Transmission power(0-31 dB)

- 4) To check the configuration information, use the 'show 80211h configuration' command.